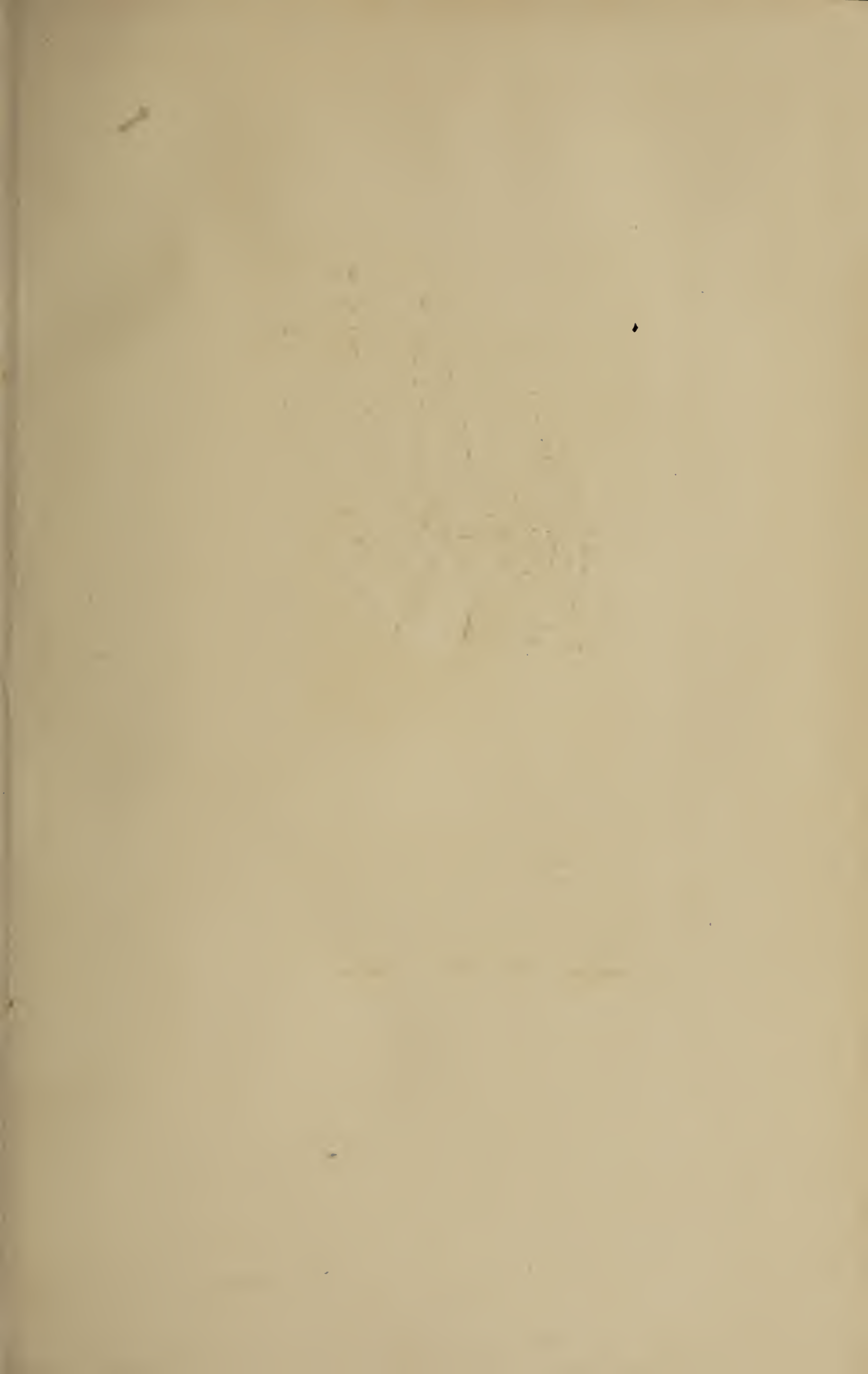
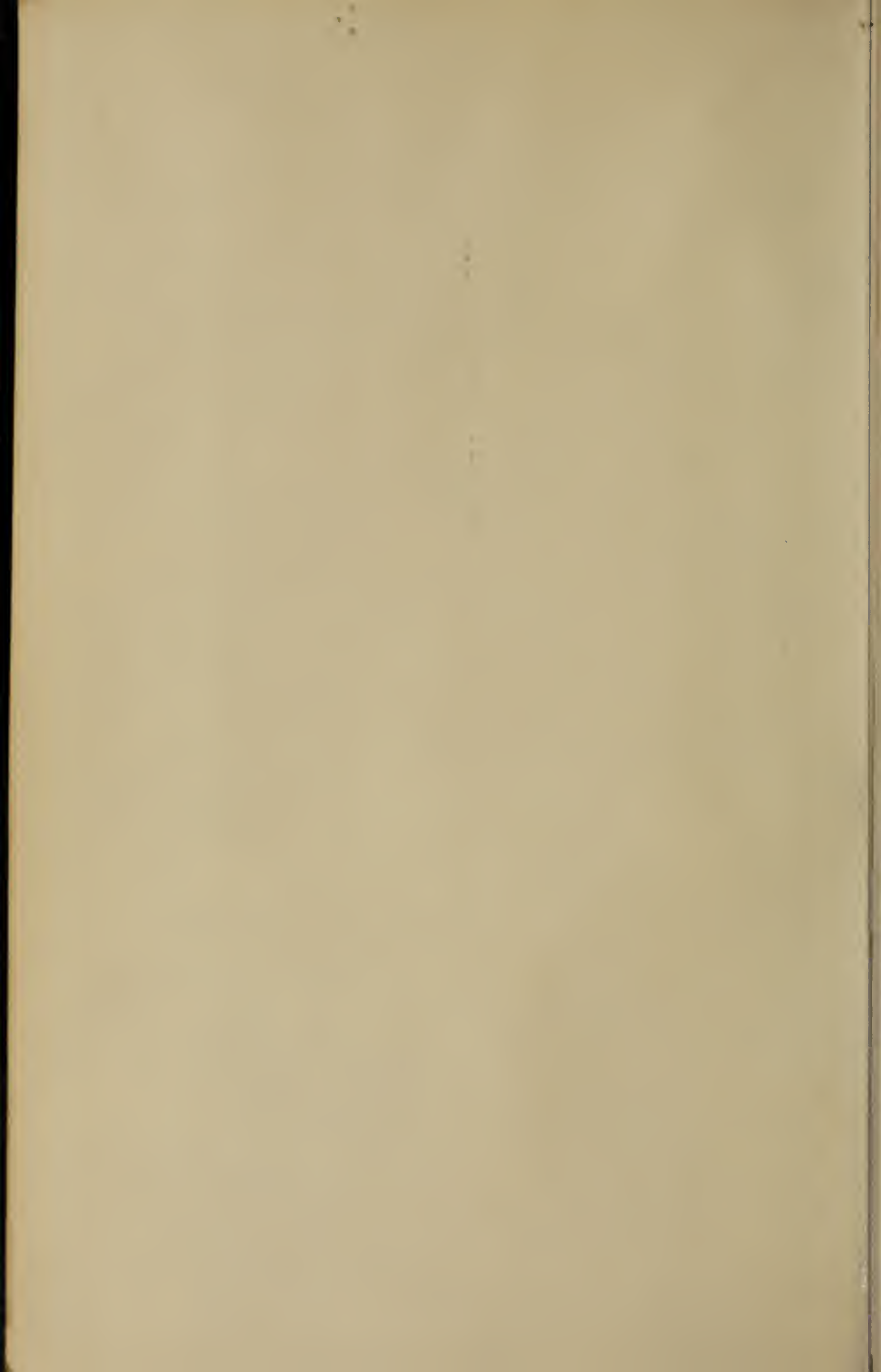


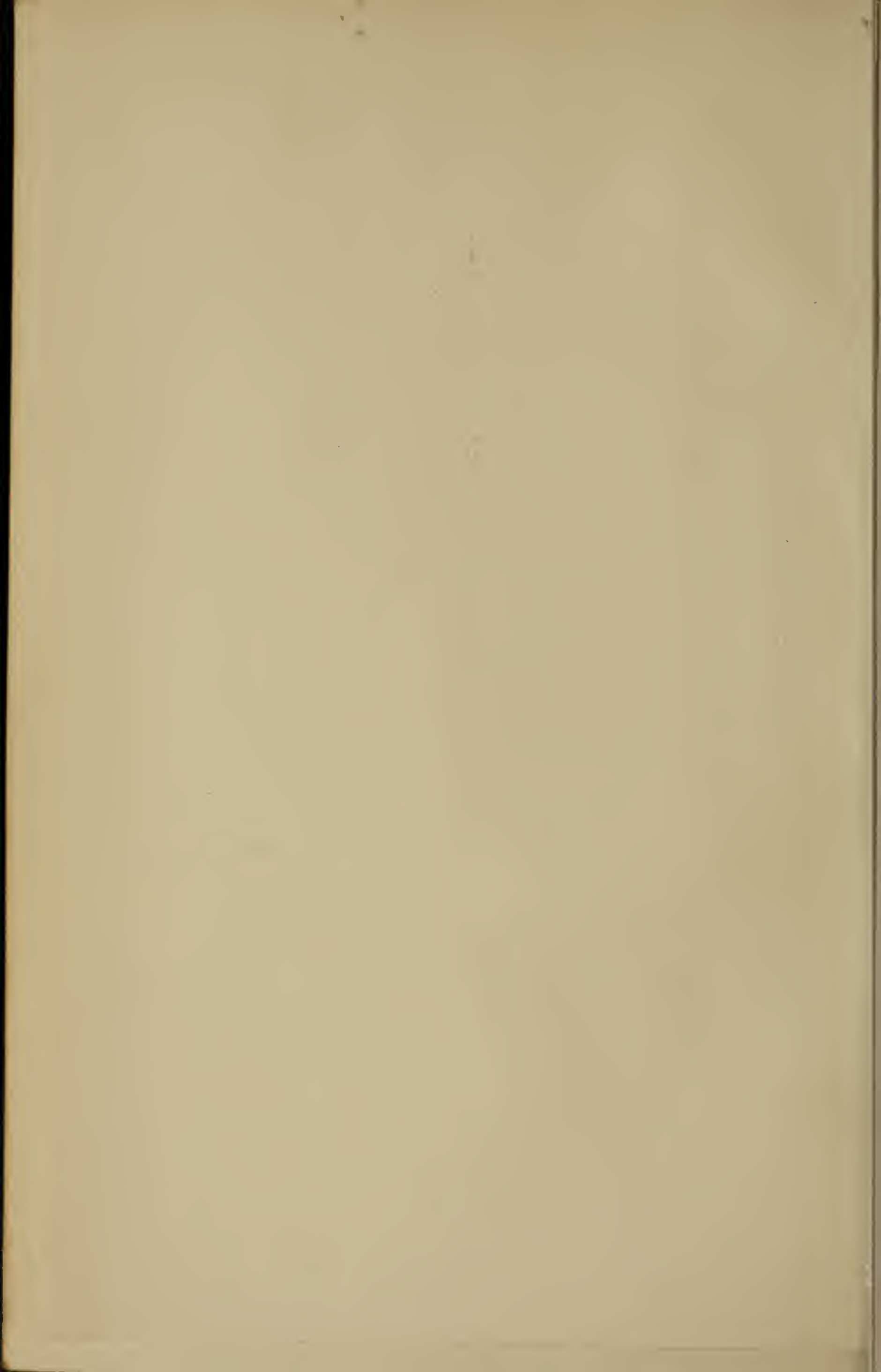
LIBRARY OF PHILLIPS ACADEMY



DOUGLAS CRAWFORD
MEMORIAL FUND







The Farther Adventures of ROBINSON CRUSOE

Being the Second and Last Part of
his LIFE, and the Strange Surprizing
ACCOUNTS of his TRAVELS Round
three Parts of the Globe

Written by Himself

To which is added a Map of the World
in which is Delineated the Voyages of
ROBINSON CRUSOE

PRINTED AT THE SHAKESPEARE HEAD PRESS
Stratford-upon-Avon; and published for the
Press by BASIL BLACKWELL, Oxford, and by
HOUGHTON MIFFLIN COMPANY
Boston and New York

53501

820
D36a
v.9

THE ILLUSTRATIONS

The Massacre & Burning the two Villages at Madagascar,

Facing page 100

R. Crusoe at Cambodia in danger of being Seiz'd by the
East India Company's Boats for a Pyrate

Facing page 119

R. Crusoe Escaping from Cambodia enters a Port in y^e
North part of China

Facing page 138

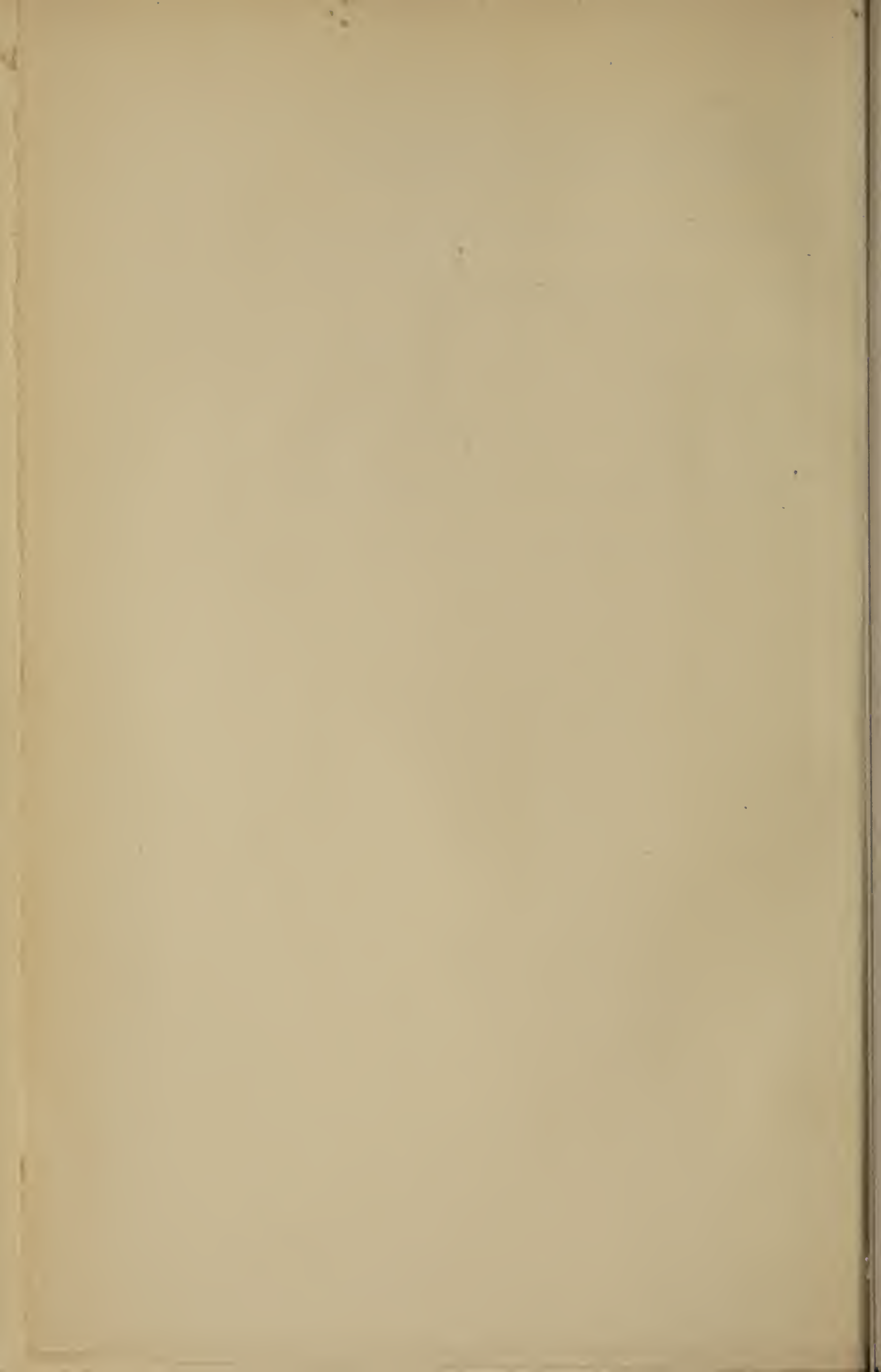
R. Crusoe with the Muscovite Caravan pass the Chinese
Wall from Peking

Facing page 166

R. Crusoe with y^e Muscovite Caravan passing y^e Desarts
are attack'd by y^e Tartars

Facing page 168

For a Note on the Illustrations see Volume I, page v.



THE
FARTHER ADVENTURES
OF
ROBINSON CRUSOE, &c.

HAVING thus given an Account of the Colony in general, and pretty much of my five Runagate *Englishmen*, I must say something of the *Spaniards*, who were the main Body of the Family; and in whose Story there are some Incidents also remarkable enough.

I had a great many Discourses with them about their Circumstances when they were among the Savages: They told me readily, that they had no Instances to give of their Application or Ingenuity in that Country; that they were a poor miserable dejected Handful of People; that if Means had been put into their Hands, they had yet so abandon'd themselves to Despair, and so sunk under the Weight of their Misfortunes, that they thought of nothing but Starving: One of them, a grave and very sensible Man, told me, he was convinc'd they were in the wrong; that it was not the Part of wise Men to give up themselves to their Misery, but always to take Hold of the Helps which Reason offer'd, as well for present Support, as for future Deliverance. He told me that Grief was the most senseless insignificant Passion in the World; for that it regarded only Things past, which were generally impossible to be recall'd, to or be remedy'd, but had no View to Things to come, and had no Share in any Thing that look'd like Deliverance, but rather added to the Affliction, than propos'd a Remedy: And upon this, he re-

peated a *Spanish* Proverb; which tho' I cannot repeat in just the same Words that he spoke in, yet I remember I made it into an *English* Proverb of my own, thus:

*In Trouble to be troubl'd,
Is to have your Trouble doubl'd.*

He ran on then in Remarks upon all the little Improvements I had made in my Solitude; my unweary'd Application, as he call'd it, and how I had made a Condition, which, in its Circumstances, was at first much worse than theirs a thousand Times, more happy than theirs was, even now, when they were all together. He told me, it was remarkable, that *Englishmen* had a greater Presence of Mind in their Distress than any People that ever he met with; that their unhappy Nation, and the *Portuguese*, were the worst Men in the World to struggle with Misfortunes; for that their first Step in Dangers, after the common Efforts are over, was always to despair, lie down under it, and die, without rousing their Thoughts up to proper Remedies for Escape.

I told him, their Case and mine differ'd exceedingly, that they were cast upon the Shore without Necessaries, without Supply of Food, or of present Sustenance, 'till they could provide: That it is true, I had this Disadvantage and Discomfort, that I was alone; but then the Supplies I had providentially thrown into my Hands, by the unexpected driving of the Ship on Shore, was such a Help as would have encourag'd any Creature in the World to have apply'd himself as I had done. Seignior, says the *Spaniard*, had we poor *Spaniards* been in your Case, we should never have gotten half those Things out of the Ship, as you did: Nay, says he, we should never have found

Means to have gotten a Raft to carry them, or to have gotten the Raft on Shore without Boat or Sail; and how much less should we have done, said he, if any of us had been alone? Well, I desir'd him to abate his Compliment, and go on with the History of their coming on Shore, where they landed, he told me, they unhappily landed at a Place where there were People without Provisions; whereas had they had the common Sense to have put off to Sea again, and gone to another Island a little farther, they had found Provisions, tho' without People; there being an Island that Way, as they had been told, where there was Provisions, tho' no People; that is to say, That the *Spaniards* of *Trinidad* had frequently been there, and had fill'd the Island with Goats and Hogs at several Times; where they have bred in such Multitudes, and where Turtle and Sea-Fowls were in such Plenty, that they could ha' been in no Want of Flesh, tho' they had found no Bread; whereas here, they were only sustain'd with a few Roots and Herbs, which they understood not, and which had no Substance in them, and which the Inhabitants gave them sparingly enough, and who could treat them no better, unless they would turn Canibals, and eat Mens Flesh, which was the great Dainty of their Country.

They gave me an Account how many Ways they strove to civilize the Savages they were with, and to teach them rational Customs in the ordinary Way of Living, but in vain; and how they retorted it upon them, as unjust, that they who came there for Assistance and Support, should attempt to set up for Instructors of those that gave them Bread; intimating, it seems, that none should set up for the Instructors of others, but those who could live without them.

They gave me dismal Accounts of the Extremities they

were driven to; how sometimes they were many Days without any Food at all; the Island they were upon being inhabited by a Sort of Savages that lived more indolent, and for that Reason were less supplied with the Necessaries of Life, than they had Reason to believe others were in the same Part of the World; and yet they found, that these Savages were less ravenous and voracious, than those who had better Supplies of Food.

Also they added, That they could not but see with what Demonstrations of Wisdom and Goodness the governing Providence of God directs the Events of Things in the World; which, they said, appear'd in their Circumstances; for if press'd by the Hardships they were under, and the Barrenness of the Country where they were, they had search'd after a better Place to live in; they had then been out of the Way of the Relief that happen'd to them by my Means.

Then they gave me an Account, how the Savages, who they liv'd among, expected them to go out with them into their Wars: And it was true, that, as they had Fire-Arms with them, had they not had the Disaster to lose their Ammunition, they should not have been serviceable only to their Friends, but have made themselves terrible both to Friends and Enemies; but being without Powder and Shot, and yet in a Condition, that they could not in Reason deny to go out with their Landlords to their Wars; when they came into the Field of Battle, they were in a worse Condition than the Savages themselves; for they neither had Bows or Arrows, nor could they use those the Savages gave them; so that they could do nothing but stand still, and be wounded with Arrows, till they came up to the Teeth of their Enemy; and then indeed the three Halberds they had, were of Use to them;

and they would often drive a whole little Army before them with those Halberds and sharpen'd Sticks put into the Muzzles of their Muskets: But that for all this they were sometimes surrounded with Multitudes, and in great Danger from their Arrows, till at last they found the Way to make themselves large Targets of Wood, which they cover'd with Skins of wild Beasts, whose Names they knew not; and these cover'd them from the Arrows of the Savages; that notwithstanding these, they were sometimes in great Danger, and were once five of them knock'd down together with the Clubs of the Savages, which was the Time when one of them was taken Prisoner; that is to say, the *Spaniard*, whom I had reliev'd, that at first they thought had been kill'd: But when afterwards they heard he was taken Prisoner, they were under the greatest Grief imaginable, and would willingly have all ventur'd their Lives to have rescu'd him.

They told me, That when they were so knock'd down, the rest of their Company rescu'd them, and stood over them, fighting till they were come to themselves, all but him who they thought had been dead; and then they made their Way with their Halberds and Pieces, standing close together in a Line, thro' a Body of above a thousand Savages, beating down all that came in their Way, got the Victory over their Enemies, but to their great Sorrow, because it was with the Loss of their Friend; who, the other Party, finding him alive, carry'd off with some others, as I gave an Account in my former.

They describ'd most affectionately, how they were surpriz'd with Joy at the Return of their Friend and Companion in Misery, who they thought had been devour'd by wild Beasts of the worst Kind, (*viz.*) by wild Men; and yet how more and more they were surpriz'd with the Ac-

count he gave them of his Errand, and that there was a Christian in any Place near, much more one that was able, and had Humanity enough to contribute to their Deliverance.

They describ'd how they were astonish'd at the Sight of the Relief I sent them, and at the Appearance of Loaves of Bread, Things they had not seen since their coming to that miserable Place; how often they cross'd it, and bless'd it, as Bread sent from Heaven; and what a reviving Cordial it was to their Spirits to taste it; as also of the other Things I had sent for their Supply. And after all, they would have told me something of the Joy they were in, at the Sight of a Boat and Pilots to carry them away to the Person and Place from whence all these new Comforts came; but they told me it was impossible to express it by Words, for their excessive Joy, naturally driving them to unbecoming Extravagancies, they had no way to describe them, but by telling me that they border'd upon Lunacy, having no way to give Vent to their Passion, suitable to the Sense that was upon them; that in some it work'd one Way, and in some another; and that some of them, thro' a Surprise of Joy, would burst out into Tears; others be stark mad, and others immediately faint. This Discourse extreamly affected me, and call'd to my Mind *Friday's* Extasy, when he met his Father, and the poor People's Extasy, when I took them up at Sea, after their Ship was on Fire; the Mate of the Ship's Joy, when he found himself deliver'd in the Place where he expected to perish; and my own Joy, when after 28 Years Captivity, I found a good Ship ready to carry me to my own Country. All these Things made me more sensible of the Relation of those poor Men, and more affected with it.

Having thus given a View of the State of Things, as I

found them, I must relate the Heads of what I did for these People, and the Condition in which I left them. It was their Opinion and mine too, that they would be troubled no more with the Savages; or that if they were, they would be able to cut them off, if they were twice as many as before; so they had no Concern about that. Then I entered into a serious Discourse with the *Spaniard*, whom I call Governor, about their Stay in the Island; for as I was not come to carry any of them off, so it would not be just to carry off some, and leave others, who perhaps would be unwilling to stay, if their Strength was diminished.

On the other hand, I told them, I came to establish them there, not to remove them; and then I let them know, that I had brought with me Relief of sundry Kinds for them; That I had been at a great Charge to supply them with all Things necessary, as well for their Convenience, as their Defence; and that I had such and such particular Persons with me, as well to encrease and recruit their Number, as by the particular necessary Employments which they were bred to, being Artificers, to assist them in those things, in which, at present, they were to seek.

They were all together when I talk'd thus to them; and before I deliver'd to them the Stores I had brought, I ask'd them one by one, If they had entirely forgot, and bury'd the first Animosities that had been among them, and would shake Hands with one another, and engage in a strict Friendship and Union of Interest, that so there might be no more Misunderstandings or Jealousies.

Will. Atkins, with Abundance of Frankness and good Humour, said, They had met with Afflictions enough to make them all sober, and Enemies enough to make them all Friends; that for his Part, he would live and die with

them; and was so far from designing any Thing against the *Spaniards*, that he own'd they had done nothing to him, but what his own mad Humour made necessary, and what he would have done, and perhaps much worse in their Case; and that he would ask them Pardon, if I desir'd it, for the foolish and brutish Things he had done to them; and was very willing and desirous of living in Terms of entire Friendship and Union with them; and would do any thing that lay in his Power to convince them of it; and as for going to *England*, he car'd not if he did not go thither these twenty Years.

The *Spaniards* said, They had indeed at first disarm'd and excluded *Will. Atkins* and his two Countrymen for their ill Conduct, as they had let me know; and they appeal'd to me, for the Necessity they were under to do so: But that *Will. Atkins* had behav'd himself so bravely in the great Fight they had with the Savages, and on several Occasions since; and had shew'd himself so faithful to, and concern'd for, the general Interest of them all, that they had forgotten all that was past, and thought he merited as much to be trusted with Arms, and supply'd with Necessaries as any of them; and that they had testify'd their Satisfaction in him, by committing the Command to him, next to the Governour himself. And as they had an entire Confidence in him and all his Countrymen, so they acknowledg'd they had merited that Confidence by all the Methods that honest Men could merit to be valued, and trusted; and they most heartily embrac'd the Occasion of giving me this Assurance, that they would never have any Interest separate from one another.

Upon these frank and open Declarations of Friendship, we appointed the next Day to dine all together; and indeed we made a splendid Feast: I caused the Ship's

Cook and his Mate to come on Shore, and dress our Dinner; and the old Cook's Mate we had on Shore, assisted. We brought on Shore six Pieces of good Beef, and four Pieces of Pork out of the Ship's Provision, with our Punch-Bowl, and Materials to fill it; and in particular, I gave them ten Bottles of *French* Claret, and ten Bottles of *English* Beer; Things that neither the *Spaniards*, or the *English* Men had tasted for many Years; and which, it may be supposed, they were exceeding glad of.

The *Spaniards* added to our Feast five whole Kids, which the Cooks roasted; and three of them were sent cover'd up close on Board the Ship, to the Seamen, that they might feast on fresh Meat from on Shore, as we did with their Salt Meat from on Board.

After this Feast, at which we were very innocently merry, I brought out my Cargo of Goods, wherein, that there might be no Dispute about dividing, I shew'd them that there was sufficient for them all; and desir'd that they might all take an equal Quantity of the Goods that were for wearing; that is to say, equal when made up; as first, I distributed Linnen sufficient to make every one of them four Shirts; and at the *Spaniards* Request afterwards, made them up six; these were exceeding comfortable to them, having been what, as I may say, they had long since forgot the Use of or what it was to wear them.

I allotted the thin *English* Stuffs, which I mention'd before, to make every one a light Coat, like a Frock, which I judg'd fittest for the Heat of the Season; cool and loose, and order'd, that whenever they decay'd, they should make more, as they thought fit: The like for Pumps, Shoes, Stockings and Hats, &c.

I cannot express what Pleasure, what Satisfaction, sat upon the Countenances of all these poor Men, when they

saw the Care I had taken of them, and how well I had furnish'd them; they told me, I was a Father to them, and that having such a Correspondent as I was, in so remote a Part of the World, it would make them forget that they were left in a desolate Place; and they all voluntarily engag'd to me not to leave the Place without my Consent.

Then I presented to them the People I had brought with me, particularly the Taylor, the Smith, and the two Carpenters, all of them most necessary People; but above all, my general Artificer, than whom they could not name any thing that was more useful to them. And the Taylor, to shew his Concern for them, went to work immediately, and, with my Leave, made them every one a Shirt the first Thing he did; and which was still more, he taught the Women, not only how to sew and stitch, and use the Needle, but made them assist to make the Shirts for their Husbands, and for all the rest.

As to the Carpenters, I scarce need mention, how useful they were, for they took in pieces all my clumsy unhandy Things, and made them clever convenient Tables, Stools, Bed-steads, Cup-boards, Lockers, Shelves, and every thing they wanted of that kind.

But to let them see how Nature made Artificers at first, I carried the Carpenters to see *Will. Atkins's* Basket-house, as I call'd it, and they both own'd they never saw an Instance of such natural Ingenuity before; nor any thing so regular, and so handily built, at least of its Kind: And one of them, when he saw it, after musing a good while, turning about to me, I am sure, says he, that Man has noneed of us, you need do nothing but give him Tools.

Then I brought them out all my Store of Tools, and gave every Man a Digging-Spade, a Shovel, and a Rake, for we had no Harrows or Plows; and to every separate

Place, a Pick-axe, a Crow, a broad Axe, and a Saw; always appointing, that as often as any were broken, or worn out, they should be supply'd without grudging, out of the general Stores that I left behind.

Nails, Staples, Hinges, Hammers, Chissels, Knives, Scissars, and all sorts of Tools, and Iron-work, they had without Tale, as they requir'd, for no Man would care to take more than they wanted, and he must be a Fool that would waſt or spoil them, on any Account whatever; and for the Use of the Smith, I left two Ton of unwrought Iron for a Supply.

My Magazine of Powder and Arms, which I brought them, was such, even to Profusion, that they could not but rejoice at them; for now they could march as I us'd to do, with a Musket upon each Shoulder, if there was Occasion, and were able to fight a thousand Savages, if they had but some little Advantages of Situation, which also they could not miss of if they had Occasion.

I carry'd on Shore with me the young Man, whose Mother was starv'd to Death, and the Maid also; she was a sober well educated religious young Woman, and behav'd so inoffensively, that every one gave her a good Word; she had indeed an unhappy Life with us, there being no Woman in the Ship but herself; but she bore it with Patience. After a while seeing Things so well order'd, and in so fine a way of thriving upon my Island, and considering that they had neither Business or Acquaintance in the *East-Indies*, or Reason for taking so long a Voyage: I say, considering all this, both of them came to me, and desir'd I would give them leave to remain on the Island, and be enter'd among my Family, as they call'd it.

I agreed to it readily, and they had a little Plat of

Ground allotted to them, where they had three Tents or Houses set up, surrounded with a Basket-work, Pallisado'd like *Atkins's*, adjoining to his Plantation: Their Tents were contriv'd, so that they had each of them a Room apart to lodge in, and a middle Tent like a great Storehouse to lay all their Goods in, and to eat and drink in; and now the other two *English* Men remov'd their Habitation to the same Place, and so the Island was divided into three Colonies, and no more, *viz.* the *Spaniards* with old *Friday*, and the first Servants, at my old Habitation under the Hill; which was, in a Word, the capital City; and where they had so enlarg'd and extended their Works, as well under as on the outside of the Hill, that they liv'd, tho' perfectly conceal'd, yet full at large. Never was there such a little City in a Wood, and so hid, I believe, in in any Part of the World; for I verily believe, a thousand Men might have rang'd the Island a Month, and if they had not known there was such a Thing, and look'd on purpose for it, they would not have found it; for the Trees stood so thick and so close, and grew so fast matted into one another, that nothing but cutting them down first could discover the Place; except the only two narrow Entrances, where they went in and out, could be found, which was not very easy; one of them was just down at the Water-edge of the Creek, and it was afterwards above two hundred Yards to the Place; and the other was up the Ladder at twice, as I have already formerly describ'd it; and they had a large Wood thick planted, also, on the Top of the Hill, which contain'd above an Acre, which grew apace, and cover'd the Place from all Discovery there, with only one narrow Place between two Trees, not easy to be discover'd to enter on that Side.

The other Colony was that of *W. Atkins's*, where there

were four Families of *English* Men, I mean those I had left there, with their Wives and Children; three Savages that were Slaves; the Widow and Children of the *English* Man that was kill'd; the young Man and the Maid; and by the way, we made a Wife of her also, before we went away: There were also the two Carpenters and the Taylor, who I brought with me for them; also the Smith, who was a very necessary Man to them, especially as a Gunsmith, to take care of their Arms; and my other Man, who I call'd, *Jack of all Trades*; who was in himself as good, almost, as 20 Men, for he was not only a very ingenious Fellow, but a very merry Fellow, and before I went away, we married him to the honest Maid that came with the Youth in the Ship, I mention'd before.

And now I speak of Marrying, it brings me naturally to say something of the *French* Ecclesiastic that I had brought with me out of the Ship's Crew, who I took up at Sea. It is true, this Man was a *Roman*, and perhaps it may give Offence to some hereafter, if I leave any Thing extraordinary upon Record, of a Man, who, before I begin, I must, (to set him out in just Colours) represent in Terms very much to his Disadvantage, in the Account of Protestants; as *first*, that he was a Papist; *secondly*, a popish Priest; and *thirdly*, a *French* Popish Priest.

But Justice demands of me to give him a due Character; and I must say, he was a grave, sober, pious, and most religious Person; exact in his Life, extensive in his Charity, and exemplar in almost every Thing he did; what then can any one say, against my being very sensible of the Value of such a Man, notwithstanding his Profession? Tho' it may be my Opinion, perhaps, as well as the Opinion of others, who shall read this, that he was mistaken.

The first Hour that I began to converse with him, after

he had agreed to go with me to the *East-Indies*, I found Reason to delight exceedingly in his Conversation; and he first began with me about Religion in the most obliging Manner imaginable.

Sir, says he, you have not only, under God, (and at that he cross'd his Breast) sav'd my Life, but you have admitted me to go this Voyage in your Ship, and by your obliging Civility have taken me into your Family, giving me an Opportunity of free Conversation. Now Sir, says he, you see by my Habit what my Profession is, and I guess by your Nation what yours is: I may think it is my Duty, and doubtless it is so, to use my utmost Endeavours, on all Occasions, to bring all the Souls I can to the Knowledge of the Truth, and to embrace the Catholick Doctrine; but as I am here under your Permission, and in your Family, I am bound in Justice to your Kindness, as well as in Decency and good Manners, to be under your Government; and therefore I shall not, without your Leave, enter into any Debates on the Point of Religion, in which we may not agree, farther than you shall give me Leave.

I told him, his Carriage was so modest, that I could not but acknowledge it; that it was true, we were such People as they call'd Hereticks; but that he was not the first Catholick that I had convers'd with, without falling into any Inconveniencies, or carrying the Questions to any height in Debate: That he should not find himself the worse us'd for being of a different Opinion from us, and if we did not converse without any Dislike on either Side upon that Score, it should be his Fault, not ours.

He reply'd, that he thought all our Conversation might be easily separated from Disputes: That it was not his Business to cap Principles with every Man he dis-

cours'd with; and that he rather desir'd me to converse with him as a Gentleman, than as a Religieuse; that if I would give him Leave at any time to discourse upon religious Subjects, he would readily comply with it; and that then, he did not doubt but I would allow him also to defend his own Opinions, as well as he could; but that, without my Leave he would not break in upon me with any such thing.

He told me farther, that he would not cease to do all that became him in his Office, as a Priest, as well as a private Christian, to procure the Good of the Ship, and the Safety of all that was in her; and tho' perhaps we would not join with him, and he could not pray *with* us, he hop'd he might pray *for* us, which he would do upon all Occasions. In this Manner we convers'd, and as he was of a most obliging Gentleman-like Behaviour; so he was, if I may be allow'd to say so, a Man of good Sense, and as I believe, of great Learning.

He gave me a most diverting Account of his Life, and of the many extraordinary Events of it; of many Adventures which had befallen him in the few Years that he had been abroad in the world, and particularly this was very remarkable, (*viz.*) That in the Voyage he was now engag'd, he had had the Misfortune to be five times ship'd and unship'd, and never to go to the Place whither any of the Ships he was in, were at first design'd: That his first Intent was to have gone to *Martinico*, and that he went on board a Ship bound thither, at *St. Malo*; but being forc'd into *Lisbon* by bad Weather, the Ship receiv'd some Damage, by running a-ground in the Mouth of the River *Tagus*, and was oblig'd to unload her Cargo there; that finding a *Portuguese* Ship there bound to the *Maderas*, and ready to sail, and supposing he should easily meet

with a Vessel there bound to *Martinico*; he went on board, in Order to sail to the *Maderas*; but the Master of the *Portuguese* Ship being but an indifferent Mariner, had been out in his Reckoning, and they drove to *Fial*; where, however, he happen'd to find a very good Market for his Cargo, which was Corn, and therefore resolv'd not to go to the *Maderas*, but to load Salt at the *Isle of May*, and go away to *Newfoundland*: He had no Remedy in this Exigence, but to go with the Ship, and had a pretty good Voyage as far as the *Banks*, so they call the Place where they catch the Fish, where meeting with a *French* Ship, bound from *France* to *Quebeck* in the River of *Canada*, and from thence to *Martinico*, to carry Provisions, he thought he should have an Opportunity to compleat his first Design: But when he came to *Quebeck*, the Master of the Ship dy'd, and the Ship proceeded no farther; so the next Voyage he shipp'd himself for *France*, in the Ship that was burnt, when we took them up at Sea, and then shipp'd with us for the *East-Indies*, as I have already said: Thus he had been disappointed in five Voyages, all, *as I may call it*, in one Voyage, besides what I shall have Occasion to mention farther of the same Person.

But, I shall not make Digressions into other Men's Stories, which have no Relation to my own. I return to what concerns our Affair in the Island: He came to me one Morning, for he lodg'd among us all the while we were upon the Island; and it happen'd to be just when I was going to visit the *English* Men's Colony, at the farthest Part of the Island, I say, he came to me, and told me, with a very grave Countenance, that he had for two or three Days desir'd an Opportunity of some Discourse with me, which he hop'd should not be displeasing to me, because he thought it might in some Measure correspond

with my general Design, which was the Prosperity of my new Colony, and perhaps might put it, at least more than he yet thought it was, in the Way of God's Blessing.

I look'd a little surpriz'd at the last Part of his Discourse, and turning a little short, *How Sir*, said I, *can it be said*, that we are not in the Way of God's Blessing, after such *visible Assistances* and *wonderful Deliverances* as we have seen here, *and of which I have given you a large Account?*

If you had pleas'd *Sir*, said he, *with a world of Modesty, and yet with great Readiness*, to have heard me, you would have found no room to have been displeas'd, much less to think so hard of me, that I should suggest, that you have not had wonderful Assistances and Deliverances; and I hope, on your Behalf, that you are in the Way of God's Blessing, and your Design is exceeding good, and will prosper: But, *Sir*, tho' it were more so, than is even possible to you, yet there may be some among you that are not equally right in their Actions: And you know, that in the Story of the Children of *Israel*, one *Achan* in the Camp remov'd God's Blessing from them, and turn'd his Hand so against them, that six and thirty of them, tho' not concern'd in the Crime, were the Object of Divine Vengeance, and bore the Weight of that Punishment.

I was sensibly touch'd with his Discourse, and told him, his Inference was so just, and the whole Design seem'd so sincere, and was really so religious in its own Nature, that I was very sorry I had interrupted him, and begg'd him to go on; and in the mean Time, because it seem'd, that what we had both to say might take up some Time, I told him, I was going to the *English* Mens Plantations, and ask'd him to go with me, and we might dis-

course of it by the Way: He told me, he would more willingly wait on me thither, because there partly the Thing was acted, which he desir'd to speak to me about, so we walk'd on; and I press'd him to be free and plain with me, in what he had to say.

Why then, Sir, says he, be pleased to give me Leave to lay down a few Propositions, as the Foundation of what I have to say, that we may not differ in the general Principles, tho' we may be of some differing Opinions in the Practice of Particulars. First, Sir, tho' we differ in some of the doctrinal Articles of Religion; and it is very unhappy that it is so, especially in the Case before us, as I shall shew afterwards: Yet there are some general Principles in which we both agree, (*viz.*) first, That there is a God; and that this God having given us some stated general Rules for our Service and Obedience, we ought not willingly and knowingly to offend him; either by neglecting to do what he has commanded, or by doing what he has expressly forbidden: And let our different Religious be what they will, this general Principle is readily own'd by us all, That the Blessing of God does not ordinarily follow a presumptuous sinning against his Command; and every good Christian will be affectionately concern'd to prevent any that are under his Care, living in a total Neglect of God and his Commands. It is not your Men being Protestants, whatever my Opinion may be of such, that discharges me from being concern'd for their Souls, and from endeavouring, if it lies before me, that they should live in as little Distance from and Enmity with their Maker, as possible, especially if you give me Leave to meddle so far in your Circuit.

I could not yet imagine what he aim'd at, and told him, I granted all he had said, and thank'd him, that he would

so far concern himself for us; and begg'd he would explain the Particulars of what he had observ'd, that, like *Joshua*, to take his own Parable, I might put away the accursed Thing from us.

Why then, Sir, says he, I will take the Liberty you give me; and there are three Things, which, if I am right, must stand in the Way of God's Blessing upon your Endeavours here, and which I should rejoice for your sake, and their own, to see remov'd. And, Sir, says he, I promise myself, that you will fully agree with me in them all, as soon as I name them; especially because I shall convince you, that every one of them may, with great Ease, and very much to your Satisfaction, be remedy'd.

He gave me no Leave to put in any more Civilities, but went on. *First*, Sir, says he, you have here four *English* Men, who have fetch'd Women from among the Savages and have taken them as their Wives, and have had many Children by them all, and yet are not marry'd to them after any stated legal Manner, as the Laws of God and Man require; and therefore are yet, in the Sense of both, no less than *Adulterers*, and living in Adultery. To this, Sir, says he, I know you will object, That there was no Clergyman or Priest of any Kind, or of any Profession, to perform the Ceremony; nor any Pen and Ink, or Paper, to write down a Contract of Marriage, and have it sign'd between them. And I know also, Sir, what the *Spaniard* Governour has told you; I mean of the Agreement that he oblig'd them to make, when they took these Women (*viz.*) That they should chuse them out by Consent, and keep separately to them; which, by the way, is nothing of a Marriage, no Agreement with the Women, as Wives, but only an Agreement among themselves, to keep them from quarrelling.

But, Sir, the Essence of the Sacrament of Matrimony (so he call'd it, being a *Roman*) consists not only in the mutual Consent of the Parties to take one another, *as Man and Wife*, but in the formal and legal Obligation, that there is in the Contract, to compel the Man and Woman at all Times, to own and acknowledge each other, obliging the Men to abstain from all other Women, to engage in no other Contract while these subsist; and on all Occasions, as Ability allows, to provide honestly for them and their Children, and to oblige the Women to the same, or like Conditions, *mutatis mutandis*, on their Side.

Now, Sir, *says he*, these Men may, when they please, or when Occasion presents, abandon these Women, disown their Children, leave them to perish, and take other Women, and marry them whilst these are living. And here he added, with some Warmth, How, Sir, is God honour'd in this unlawful Liberty? And how shall a Blessing succeed your Endeavours in this Place? *However good in themselves, and however sincere in your Design*, while these Men, who at present are your Subjects, under your absolute Government and Dominion, are allow'd by you to live in open Adultery?

I confess, I was struck at the Thing itself, but much more with the convincing Arguments he supported it with; for it was certainly true, that tho' they had no Clergyman upon the Spot, yet a formal Contract on both Sides, made before Witnesses, and confirm'd by any Token, which they had all agreed to be bound by, tho' it had been but breaking a Stick between them, engaging the Men to own these Women for their Wives, upon all Occasions, and never to abandon them or their Children, and the Women to the same with their Husbands, had been an

effectual lawful Marriage in the Sight of God; and it was a great Neglect that it was not done.

But I thought to have gotten off with my young Priest, by telling him, that all that Part was done when I was not here, and they had liv'd so many Years with them now, that if it was an Adultery, it was past Remedy, they could do nothing in it now.

Sir, *says he, asking your Pardon for such Freedom*, you are right in this, that it being done in your Absence, you could not be charg'd with that Part of the Crime: But I beseech you, flatter not yourself, that you are not therefore under an Obligation to do your utmost now to put an End to it. How can you think, but that, let the Time past lie on who it will, all the Guilt, for the future, will lie entirely upon you? Because it is certainly in your Power now to put an End to it, and in no Body's Power but yours.

I was so dull still, that I did not take him right; but I imagin'd, that by putting an End to it, he meant that I should part them, and not suffer them to live together any longer; *And I said to him*, I could not do that by any Means, for that it would put the whole Island into Confusion: He seem'd surpriz'd, that I should so far mistake him. No, Sir, *says he*, I do not mean, that you should now separate them, but legally and effectually marry them now; and as, Sir, my Way of marrying them may not be so easy to reconcile them to, tho' it will be as effectual, even by your own Laws, so your Way may be as well before God, and as valid among Men; I mean, by a written Contract, sign'd by both Man and Woman, and by all the Witnesses present, which all the Laws of *Europe* would decree to be valid.

I was amaz'd to see so much true Piety, and so much

Sincerity of Zeal, besides the unusual Impartiality in his Discourse, as to his own Party or Church, and such true Warmth for the preserving People that he had no Knowledge of, or Relation to; I say, for preserving them from transgressing the Laws of God; the like of which I had indeed not met with any where: But recollecting what he had said, of marrying them by a written Contract, which I knew would stand too; I return'd it back upon him, and told him, I granted all that he had said to be just, and on his Part very kind, that I would discourse with the Men upon the Point now, when I came to them: And I knew no Reason why they shou'd scruple to let him marry them all, which I knew well enough would be granted to be as authentick and valid in *England*, as if they were marry'd by one of our own Clergymen. What was afterwards done in this Matter, I shall speak of by itself.

I then press'd him to tell me what was the *second Complaint* which he had to make, acknowledging, that I was very much his Debtor for the *first*, and thank'd him heartily for it. He told me, he would use the same Freedom and Plainness in the *second*, and hop'd I would take it as well: And this was, that notwithstanding these *English* Subjects of mine, *as he call'd them*, had lived with those Women for almost seven Years, had taught them to speak *English*, and even to read it; and that they were, as he perceiv'd, Women of tolerable Understanding, and capable of Instruction; yet they had not to this Hour taught them any thing of the Christian Religion, no, not so much as to know that there was a God, or a Worship, or in what Manner God was to be served, or that their own Idolatry, and worshipping they knew not who, was false and absurd.

This, he said, was an unaccountable Neglect, and what God would certainly call them to Account for, and per-

haps at last take the Work out of their Hands. He spoke this very affectionately and warmly. I am perswaded, *says he*, had those Men lived in the Savage Country, whence their Wives came, the Savages would have taken more Pains to have brought them to be Idolaters, and to worship the Devil, than any of these Men, *so far as he could see*, had taken with them to teach them the Knowledge of the true God. Now, Sir, *said he*, tho' I do not acknowledge your Religion, or you mine, yet we should be glad to see the Devil's Servants, and the Subjects of his Kingdom, taught to know the general Principles of the Christian Religion; that they might, at least, hear of God, and of a Redeemer, and of the Resurrection, and of a future State, Things which we all believe; they had at least been so much nearer coming into the Bosom of the true Church, than they are now in the publick Profession of Idolatry and Devil-Worship.

I could hold no longer; I took him in my Arms, and embrac'd him with an Excess of Passion: *How far*, said I to him, have I been from understanding the most essential Part of a Christian! (*viz.*) to love the Interest of the Christian Church, and the good of other Mens Souls. I scarce have known what belongs to being a Christian. O, Sir, do not say so, *reply'd he*, this Thing is not your Fault. No, *says I*, but why did I never lay it to Heart as well as you? 'Tis not too late yet, *said he*, be not too forward to condemn yourself: but what can be done now, *said I*, you see I am going away? Will you give me Leave, *said he*, to talk with those poor Men about it? Yes, with all my Heart *said I*, and will oblige them to give heed to what you say too: As to that, *said he*, we must leave them to the Mercy of Christ; but 'tis our Business to assist them, encourage them, and instruct them; and if you will give me

Leave, and God his Blessing, I do not doubt but the poor ignorant Souls shall be brought Home into the great Circle of Christianity, if not into the particular Faith that we all embrace, and that even while you stay here: Upon this, *I said*, I shall not only give you Leave, but give you a thousand Thanks for it. What follow'd on this Account, I shall mention also again in its Place.

I now press'd him for the *Third* Article, in which we were to blame. Why really, *says he*, it is of the same Nature, and I will proceed, *asking your Leave*, with the same Plainness as before; it is about your poor Savages, who are, as I may say, your conquer'd Subjects. It is a Maxim Sir, that is or ought to be receiv'd among all Christians of what Church or pretended Church soever, (*viz.*) *The Christian Knowledge ought to be propagated by all possible Means, and on all possible Occasions:* 'Tis on this Principle that our Church sends Missionaries into *Persia, India, and China*, and that our Clergy, even of the superior Sort, willingly engage in the most hazardous Voyages, and the most dangerous Residence among Murderers and Barbarians, to teach them the Knowledge of the true God, and to bring them over to embrace the Christian Faith. Now, Sir, you have such an Opportunity here, to have six or seven and thirty poor Savages brought over from Idolatry to the Knowledge of God their Maker and Redeemer, that I wonder how you can pass such an Occasion of doing Good, which is really worth the Expence of a Man's whole life.

I was now struck dumb indeed, and had not one Word to say. I had here a Spirit of true Christian Zeal for God and Religion before me, let his particular Principles be of what Kind soever; as for me, I had not so much as entertain'd a Thought of this in my Heart before, and I be-

lieve should not have thought of it; for I look'd upon these Savages as Slaves, and People, who, had we had any Work for them to do, we would ha' used as such, or would ha' been glad to have transported them to any other Part of the World; for our Business was to get rid of them, and we would all have been satisfy'd, if they had been sent to any Country, so they had never seen their own: *But to the Case*, I say, I was confounded at his Discourse, and knew not what Answer to make him. He look'd earnestly at me, seeing me in some Disorder; Sir, *says he*, I shall be very sorry, if what I have said gives you any Offence: No, No, *says I*, I am offended with no Body but myself; but I am perfectly confounded, not only to think that I should never take any Notice of this before, but with reflecting what Notice I am able to take of it now. You know, Sir, *said I*, what Circumstances I am in, I am bound to the *East-Indies*, in a Ship freighted by Merchants, and to whom it would be an unsufferable Piece of Injustice to detain their Ship here, the Men lying all this while at Victuals and Wages upon the Owners Account. It is true, I agreed to be allow'd twelve Days here, and if I stay more, I must pay 3*l. Sterling per Diem* Demorage, nor can I stay upon Demorage above eight Days more, and I have been here thirteen Days already, so that I am perfectly unable to engage in this Work, unless I would suffer my self to be left behind here again, in which Case, if this single Ship should miscarry in any Part of her Voyage, I should be just in the same Condition that I was left in here at first, and from which I have been so wonderfully delivered.

He own'd the Case was very hard upon me, as to my Voyage, but laid it home upon my Conscience, whether the Blessing of saving seven and thirty Souls, was not worth my venturing all I had in the World for? I was not

so sensible of that *as he was*. I return'd upon him thus, why, Sir, it is a valuable Thing indeed, to be an Instrument in God's Hand to convert seven and thirty Heathen to the Knowledge of Christ, but as you are an Ecclesiastic, and are given over to the Work, so that it seems so naturally to fall into the Way of your Profession; how is it, that you do not rather offer your self to undertake it, than press me to it?

Upon this he fac'd about, just before me, as we walk'd along, and putting me to a full Stop, made me a very low Bow; I most heartily thank God and you, Sir, *says he*, for giving me so evident a Call to so blessed a Work; and if you think your self discharg'd from it, and desire me to undertake it, I will most readily do it, and think it a happy Reward for all the Hazards and Difficulties of such a broken disappointed Voyage as I have met with, that I may be dropt at last into so glorious a Work.

I discover'd a kind of Rapture in his Face while he spoke this to me; his Eyes sparkl'd like Fire, his Face glow'd, and his Colour came and went, as if he had been falling into Fits; in a Word, he was fir'd with the Joy of being embark'd in such a Work. I paus'd a considerable while before I could tell what to say to him, for I was really surpriz'd to find a Man of such Sincerity and Zeal, and carry'd out in his Zeal beyond the ordinary Rate of Men, not of his Profession only, but even of any Profession whatsoever. But after I had consider'd it awhile, I ask'd him seriously if he was in earnest, and that he would venture on the single Consideration of an Attempt on those poor People, to be lock'd up in an unplanted Island for, perhaps, his Life, and at last might not know whether he should be able to do them any Good, or not?

He turn'd short upon me, and ask'd me what I call'd a

Venture? Pray, Sir, *said he*, what do you think I consented to go in your Ship to the *East-Indies* for? Nay, *said I*, that I know not, unless it was to preach to the *Indians*: Doubtless it was, *said he*; and do you think, if I can convert these seven and thirty Men to the Faith of Christ, it is not worth my time, tho' I should never be fetch'd off the Island again; nay, is it not infinitely of more worth to save so many Souls, than my life is, or the Life of twenty more of the same Profession? Yes, Sir, *says he*, I would give Christ and the blessed Virgin Thanks all my Days, if I could be made the least happy Instrument of saving the Souls of these poor Men, tho' I was never to set my Foot off this Island, or see my native Country any more. But since you will honour me, *says he*, with putting me into this Work, *for which I will pray for you all the Days of my Life*; I have one humble Petition to you, *said he*, besides. What is that, *said I*? Why, *says he*, it is, that you will leave your Man *Friday* with me, to be my Interpreter to them, and to assist me; for without some Help I cannot speak to them, or they to me.

I was sensibly troubled at his requesting *Friday*, because I could not think of parting with him, and that for many Reasons; he had been the Companion of my Travels; he was not only faithful to me, but sincerely affectionate to the last Degree, and I had resolv'd to do something considerable for him, if he out-liv'd me, as it was probable he would. Then I knew that, as I had bred *Friday* up to be a Protestant, it would quite confound him to bring him to embrace another Profession; and he would never, while his Eyes were open, believe that his old Master was a Heretick and would be damn'd; and this might in the End ruin the poor Fellow's Principles, and so turn him to his first Idolatry.

However, a sudden Thought reliev'd me in this Strait, and it was this; I told him, I could not say that I was willing to part with *Friday* on any Account whatever, tho' a Work that to him was of more Value than his Life, ought to be to me of much less Value than the keeping or parting with a Servant: But on the other hand, I was persuaded that *Friday* would by no Means consent to part with me, and I could not force him to it without his Consent, without manifest Injustice, because I had promised I would never put him away, and he had promis'd and engag'd to me, that he would never leave me, unless I put him away.

He seem'd very much concern'd at it, for he had no rational Access to these poor People, seeing he did not understand one Word of their Language, nor they one Word of his: To remove this Difficulty, I told him, *Friday's* Father had learn'd *Spanish*, which I found he also understood, and he should serve him for an Interpreter; so he was much better satisfied, and nothing could persuade him but he would stay to endeavour to convert them; but Providence gave another, and very happy Turn to all this.

I come back now to the first Part of his Objections. When we came to the *English* Men, I sent for them all together, and after some Account given them of what I had done for them, *viz.* what necessary Things I had provided for them, and how they were distributed, which they were very sensible of, and very thankful for; I began to talk to them of the scandalous Life they led, and gave them a full Account of the Notice the Clergyman had already taken of it, and arguing how unchristian and irreligious a Life it was. I first ask'd them if they were married Men or Batchelors? They soon explain'd their Condition

to me, and shew'd me that two of them were Widowers, and the other three were single Men or Batchelors. I ask'd them with what Consciences they could take these Women and lie with them, as they had done, call them their Wives, and have so many Children by them, and not be marry'd lawfully to them.

They all gave me the Answer that I expected, *viz.* that there was no Body to marry them; that they agreed before the Governor to keep them as their Wives; and to keep them and own them as their Wives; and they thought as Things stood with them, they were as legally married as if they had been married by a Parson, and with all the Formalities in the World.

I told them, that no doubt they were married in the Sight of God, and were bound in Conscience to keep them as their Wives, but that the Laws of Men being otherwise, they might pretend they were not married, and so desert the poor Women and Children hereafter; and that their Wives being poor desolate Women, friendless and moneyless, would have no way to help themselves. I therefore told them, that unless I was assur'd of their honest Intent, I could do nothing for them; but would take Care that what I did should be for the Women and their Children without them, and that unless they would give some Assurances that they would marry the Women, I could not think it was convenient they should continue together as Man and Wife, for that it was both scandalous to Men, and offensive to God, who they could not think would bless them, if they went on thus.

All this went on as I expected, and they told me, especially *Will. Atkins*, who seem'd now to speak for the rest, that they lov'd their Wives as well, as if they had been born in their own Native Country, and would not leave

them upon any Account whatever; and they did verily believe their Wives were as virtuous and as modest, and did, to the utmost of their Skill, as much for them, and for their Children, as any Women could possibly do, and they would not part with them on any Account: And *Will. Atkins* for his own Particular added, if any Man would take him away, and offer to carry him home to *England*, and make him Captain of the best Man of War in the Navy, he would not go with him, if he might not carry his Wife and Children with him; and if there was a Clergyman in the Ship, he would be married to her now with all his Heart.

This was just as I would have it; the Priest was not with me at that Moment, but was not far off: So to try him farther, I told him I had a Clergyman with me, and if he was sincere, I would have him married the next Morning and bid him consider of it, and talk with the rest; he said, as for himself, he need not consider of it at all, for he was very ready to do it, and was glad I had a Minister with me, and he believ'd they would be all willing also. I then told him that my Friend the Minister was a *French Man*, and could not speak *English*, but that I would act the Clerk between them: He never so much as ask'd me whether he was Papist or Protestant, which was indeed what I was afraid of: But, I say, they never enquir'd about it. So we parted, I went back to my Clergyman, and *Will. Atkins* went in to talk with his Companions. I desir'd the *French Gentleman* not to say anything to them, till the Business was thorough ripe, and I told him what Answer the Men had given me.

Before I went from their Quarter, they all came to me, and told me, they had been considering what I had said, that they were very glad to hear I had a Clergyman in my Company, and they were very willing to give me the Satis-

faction I desir'd, and to be formally Married as soon as I pleas'd, for they were far from desiring to part with their Wives, and that they meant nothing but what was very honest when they chose them; so I appointed them to meet me the next Morning, and that in the mean time they should let their Wives know the meaning of the Marriage-Law; and that it was not only to prevent any Scandal, but also to oblige them, that they should not forsake them, whatever might happen.

The Women were easily made sensible of the Meaning of the Thing, and were very well satisfied with it, as, indeed, they had Reason to be; so they fail'd not to attend all together at my Apartment the next Morning, where I brought out my Clergyman; and tho' he had not on a Minister's Gown, after the Manner of *England*, or the Habit of a Priest, after the Manner of *France*; yet having a black Vest something like a Cassock, with a Sash round it, he did not look very unlike a Minister; and as for his Language, I was his Interpreter.

But the Seriousness of his Behaviour to them, and the Scruples he made of marrying the Women, because they were not baptiz'd, and profess'd *Christians*, gave them an exceeding Reverence for his Person; and there was no need after that, to enquire whether he was a Clergyman or no.

Indeed, I was afraid his Scruple would have been carry'd so far, as that he would not have marry'd them at all; nay, notwithstanding all I was able to say to him, he resisted me, though modestly, yet very steadily, and at last refused absolutely to marry them, unless he had first talk'd with the Men, and the Women too; and though at first I was a little backward to it, yet at last I agreed to it with a good Will, perceiving the Sincerity of his Design.

When he came to them, he let them know, that I had acquainted him with their Circumstances, and with the present Design: That he was very willing to perform that Part of his Function, and marry them as I had desir'd; but that before he could do it, he must take the Liberty to talk with them. He told them, That in the Sight of all indifferent Men, and in the Sense of the Laws of Society, they had liv'd all this while in an open Adultery; and that it was true, that nothing but the consenting to marry, or effectually separating them from one another now, could put an End to it; but there was a Difficulty in it too, with respect to the Laws of *Christian* Matrimony, which he was not fully satisfy'd about, *viz.* That of marrying one that is a profess'd *Christian*, to a Savage, an Idolator, and a Heathen, one that is not baptiz'd; and yet that he did not see that there was Time left for it to endeavour to persuade the Women to be baptiz'd, or to profess the Name of *Christ*, whom they had, he doubted, heard nothing of, and without which they could not be baptiz'd.

He told them, He doubted they were but indifferent Christians themselves; that they had but little Knowledge of God, or of his Ways; and therefore he could not expect that they had said much to their Wives on that Head yet; but that unless they would promise him to use their Endeavour with their Wives, to persuade them to become Christians, and would as well as they could instruct them in the Knowledge and Belief of God that made them, and to worship Jesus Christ that redeem'd them, he could not marry them; for he would have no Hand in joining Christians with Savages; nor was it consistent with the Principles of the Christian Religion; and was indeed expressly forbidden in God's Law.

They heard all this very attentively, and I deliver'd it

very faithfully to them, from his Mouth, as near his own Words as I could, only sometimes adding something of my own to convince them how just it was, and how I was of his Mind; and I always very faithfully distinguish'd between what I said from myself, and what were the Clergyman's Words. They told me, it was very true, what the Gentleman had said, that they were but very indifferent *Christians* themselves, and that they had never talk'd to their Wives about Religion. *Lord, Sir!* says *Will. Atkins*, How should we teach them Religion? Why we know nothing our selves; and besides, Sir, *said he*, should we go to talk to them of *God*, and *Jesus Christ*, and *Heaven* and *Hell*, 'twould be to make them laugh at us, and ask us, What we believe our selves? And if we should tell them we believe all the Things that we speak of to them, such as of good People going to *Heaven*, and wicked People to the *Devil*, they would ask us, Where we intend to go our selves, that believe all this, and are such wicked Fellows, as we indeed are? Why, Sir, 'tis enough to give them a Surfeit of Religion at first Hearing: Folks must have some Religion themselves, before they pretend to teach other People: *Will Atkins, said I to him*; though I am afraid what you say has too much Truth in it, yet can you not tell your Wife that she's in the wrong? that there is a God, and a Religion better than her own; that her Gods are Idols, that they can neither hear nor speak; that there is a great Being that made all Things, and that can destroy all that he had made; that he rewards the Good, and punishes the Bad; and that we are to be judg'd by him at last for all we do here: You are not so ignorant, but even Nature itself will teach you that all this is true, and I am satisfy'd you know it all to be true, and believe it yourself.

That's true, Sir, said *Atkins*; but with what Face can

I say any Thing to my Wife of all this, when she will tell me immediately it cannot be true?

Not true, *said I*, What do you mean by that? Why, Sir, *said he*, She will tell me it cannot be true, that this God I shall tell her of can be just, or can punish, or reward, since I am not punish'd, and sent to the Devil, that have been such a wicked Creature as she knows I have been, even to her, and to every Body else; and that I should be suffer'd to live, that have been always acting so contrary to what I must tell her is Good, and to what I ought to have done.

Why, truly, *Atkins, said I*, I am afraid thou speakest too much Truth; and with that I let the Clergyman know what *Atkins* had said, for he was impatient to know: *O! said the Priest*; tell him there is one Thing will make him the best Minister in the World to his Wife, and that is, *Repentance*; for none teach Repentance like true Penitents: He wants nothing but to repent, and then he will be so much the better qualify'd to instruct his Wife: He will be then able to tell her, that there is not only a God, and that he is the just Rewarder of Good and Evil, but that he is a merciful Being, and with infinite Goodness and Long-suffering forbears to punish those that offend, waiting to be gracious, and willing not the Death of a Sinner, but rather that he should return and live; that oftentimes suffers wicked Men to go on a long Time, and even reserves Damnation to the general Day of Retribution; that it is a clear Evidence of God, and of a future State, that righteous Men receive not their Reward, or wicked Men their Punishment, 'till they come into another World; and this will lead him to teach his Wife the Doctrine of the Resurrection, and of the last Judgment; let him but repent for himself, he will be an excellent Preacher of Repentance to his Wife.

I repeated all this to *Atkins*, who look'd very serious all the while, and who, we could easily perceive, was more than ordinarily affected with it: When being eager, and hardly suffering me to make an End, *I know all this, Master*, says he, *and a great deal more*; but I han't the Impudence to talk thus to my Wife, when God, and my own Conscience knows, and my Wife will be an undeniable Evidence against me, that I have liv'd, as if I had never heard of a God, or future State, or any Thing about it; and to talk of my repenting, A L A S ! *And with that he fetch'd a deep Sigh*; and I could see, that Tears stood in his Eyes; 'Tis past all that with me. Past it! ATKINS, said I, What do'st thou mean by that? I know well enough what I mean, says he, *I mean 'tis too late*, and that is too true.

I told my Clergyman Word for Word what he said; the poor zealous Priest (I must call him so; for, be his Opinion what it will, he had certainly a most singular Affection for the Good of other Mens Souls; and it would be hard to think he had not the like for his own) I say, this zealous affectionate Man, could not refrain Tears also: But, recovering himself, he said to me, ask him but one Question, Is he easy that it is too late, or is he troubled, and wishes it were not so? I put the Question fairly to *Atkins*, and he answered with a great deal of Passion, How could any Man be easy in a Condition that certainly must end in eternal Destruction? that he was far from being easy, but that, on the contrary, he believ'd it would one Time or other ruin him.

What do you mean by that? said I. Why, he said he believ'd he should, one Time or other, cut his Throat to put an End to the Terror of it.

The Clergyman shook his Head with a great Concern

in his Face, when I told him all this: But turning quick to me upon it, *says he*, If that be his Case, you may assure him it is not too late; Christ will give him Repentance: But pray, *says he*, explain this to him, That as no Man is sav'd but by Christ and the Merit of his Passion, procuring divine Mercy for him, how can it be too late for any Man to receive Mercy? Does he think he is able to sin beyond the Power or Reach of divine Mercy? Pray tell him, there may be a Time when provok'd Mercy will no longer strive, and when God may refuse to hear, but that 'tis never too late for Men to ask Mercy; and we that are Christ's Servants are commanded *to preach* Mercy at all Times, *in the Name of Jesus Christ, to all those that sincerely repent*; so that 'tis never too late to repent.

I told *Atkins* all this, and he heard me with great Earnestness; but it seem'd as if he turn'd off the Discourse to the rest; for he said to me he would go and have some Talk with his Wife; so he went out a while, and we talk'd to the rest. I perceiv'd they were all stupidly ignorant as to Matters of Religion; much as I was when I went rambling away from my Father; and yet that there were none of them backward to hear what had been said; and all of them seriously promis'd that they would talk with their Wives about it, and do their Endeavour to persuade them to turn Christians.

The Clergyman smil'd upon me, when I reported what Answer they gave, but said nothing a good while; but, *at last*, shaking his Head, We that are Christ's Servants, *says he*, can go no further than to exhort and instruct, and when Men comply, submit to the Reproof, and promise what we ask 'tis all we can do; we are bound to accept their good Words: But believe me, Sir, *said he*, whatever you may have known of the Life of that Man you call

Will. Atkins, I believe he is the only sincere Convert among them; I take that Man to be a true Penitent; I wont despair of the rest; but that Man is apparently struck with the Sense of his past Life; and I doubt not, but when he comes to talk Religion to his Wife, he will talk himself effectually into it; for attempting to teach others, is sometimes the best way of teaching our selves. I knew a Man, who having nothing but a summary Notion of Religion himself, and being wicked and profligate to the last Degree in his Life, made a thorough Reformation in himself, by labouring to convert a *Jew*. If that poor *Atkins* begins but once to talk seriously of Jesus Christ to his Wife, my Life for it, he talks himself into a thorough Convert, makes himself a Penitent: And who knows what may follow?

Upon this Discourse however, and their promising, as above, to endeavour to persuade their Wives to embrace Christianity, he marry'd the other three Couple; but *Will. Atkins* and his Wife were not yet come in. After this, my Clergyman, waiting a while, was curious to know where *Atkins* was gone; and, turning to me, *says he*, I entreat you, Sir, let us walk out of your Labyrinth here, and look; I dare say, we shall find this poor Man somewhere or other talking seriously to his Wife, and teaching her already something of Religion. I began to be of the same Mind; so we went out together, and I carry'd him a Way which none knew but myself, and where the Trees were so thick set, as that it was not easy to see thro' the Thicket of Leaves, and far harder to *see in*, than to *see out*; when, coming to the Edge of the Wood, I saw *Atkins* and his tawny Savage Wife sitting under the Shade of a Bush, very eager in Discourse; I stopp'd short till my Clergyman came up to me; and then having show'd him where they were, we stood and look'd very steadily at them a good while.

We observ'd him very earnest with her, pointing up to the Sun, and to every Quarter of the Heavens, then down to the Earth, then out to the Sea, then to himself, then to her, to the Woods, to the Trees. Now, says my Clergyman, you see my Words are made good, the Man preaches to her; mark him now, he is telling her, that our God has made him, and her, and the Heavens, the Earth, the Sea, the Woods, the Trees, &c. I believe he is, *said I*; immediately we perceiv'd *Will. Atkins* start up upon his Feet, fall down on his Knees, and lift up both his Hands: We suppose he said something, but we could not hear him, it was too far for that; he did not continue kneeling half a Minute, but comes and sits down again by his Wife, and talks to her again. We perceiv'd then the Woman very attentive, but whether she said any thing or no we could not tell; while the poor Fellow was upon his Knees, I could see the Tears run plentifully down my Clergyman's Cheeks, and I could hardly forbear my self; but it was a great Affliction to us both that we were not near enough to hear any Thing that pass'd between them.

Well, however, we could come no nearer for fear of disturbing them, so we resolv'd to see an End of this Piece of *still Conversation*, and it spoke loud enough to us without the Help of Voice. He sat down again, as I have said, close by her, and talk'd again earnestly to her, and two or three times we could see him embrace her most passionately; another time we saw him take out his Handkerchief and wipe her Eyes, and then kiss her again with a kind of Transport very unusual; and after several of these Things we see him, on a sudden, jump up again and lend her his Hand to help her up, when immediately, leading her by the Hand a Step or two, they both kneel'd down together, and continu'd so about two Minutes.

My Friend could bear it no longer, but cries out aloud, St. PAUL! St. PAUL! *behold he prayeth*; I was afraid *Atkins* would hear him, therefore I entreated him to withhold himself awhile, that we might see an End of the Scene, which to me, I must confess, was the most affecting, and yet the most agreeable that ever I saw in my Life: Well, he strove with himself and contain'd himself for a while, but was in such Raptures of Joy, to think that the poor Heathen Woman was become a Christian, that he was not able to contain himself; he wept several times, then throwing up his Hands and crossing his Breast, said over several Things Ejaculatory and by way of giving God Thanks for so miraculous a Testimony of the Success of our Endeavours; some he spoke softly, and I could not well hear, others audibly, some in *Latin*, some in *French*; then two or three times the Tears of Joy would interrupt him, that he could not speak at all: But I begg'd that he would compose himself, and let us more narrowly and fully observe what was before us, which he did for a Time, and the Scene was not ended there yet; for after the poor Man and his Wife were risen again from their Knees, we observ'd he stood talking still eagerly to her; and we observ'd by her Motion, that she was greatly affected with what he said, by her frequent lifting up her Hands, laying her Hand to her Breast, and such other Postures, as usually express the greatest Seriousness and Attention. This continu'd about half a Quarter of an Hour, and then they walk'd away too; so that we could see no more of them in that Situation.

I took this Interval to talk with my Clergyman: And first, I told him, I was glad to see the Particulars we had both been Witnesses to; that tho' I was hard enough of Belief in such Cases, yet that I began to think it was all

very sincere here, both in the Man and his Wife, however ignorant they might both be; and I hop'd such a Beginning would have a yet more happy End; and who knows, *said I*, but these two may in Time, by Instruction and Example, work upon some of the others? Some of them! *said he, turning quick upon me*, ay, *upon all of them*; depend upon it, if those two Savages, for he has been but little better, as you relate it, should embrace Jesus Christ, they will never leave 'till they work upon all the rest; for true Religion is naturally communicative, and he that is once made a Christian, will never leave a Pagan behind him, if he can help it. I own'd it was a most Christian Principle to think so, and a Testimony of a true Zeal, as well as a generous Heart in him: But, my Friend, *said I*, will you give me Leave to start one Difficulty here? I cannot tell how to object the least Thing against that affectionate Concern, which you shew for the turning the poor People from their Paganism to the Christian Religion: But how does this comfort you, while these People are in your Account out of the Pale of the Catholick Church, without which you believe there is no Salvation; so that you esteem these but Hereticks, and for other Reasons as effectually lost as the Pagans themselves.

To this he answer'd with abundance of Candor and Christian Charity thus; Sir, I am a Catholick of the *Roman* Church, and a Priest of the Order of *St. Benedict*, and I embrace all the Principles of the *Roman* Faith: But yet if you will believe me, *and that I do not speak in Compliment to you, or in respect to my Circumstances and your Civilities*; I say, nevertheless, I do not look upon you, who call your selves reform'd, without some Charity: I dare not say, *tho' I know it is our Opinion in general*; I say, I dare not say, that you cannot be sav'd: I will by no means limit the

Mercy of Christ so far, as to think that he cannot receive you into the Bosom of his Church in a Manner to us unperceivable, and which it is impossible for us to know, and I hope you have the same Charity for us; I pray daily for your being all restor'd to Christ's Church, by whatsoever Methods he, who is *All-wise*, is pleas'd to direct: In the mean time, sure you will allow it to consist with me, as a *Roman*, to distinguish far between a Protestant and a Pagan; between one that calls on Jesus Christ, tho' in a Way which I do not think is according to the true Faith, and a Savage, a Barbarian, that knows no God, no Christ, no Redeemer; and if you are not within the Pale of the Catholick Church, we hope you are nearer being restor'd to it than those that know nothing of God or his Church: And I rejoyce therefore when I see this poor Man, who you say has been a Profligate, and almost a Murderer, kneel down and pray to Jesus Christ, as we suppose he did, tho' not fully enlighten'd; believing that God, from whom every such Work proceeds, will sensibly touch his Heart, and bring him to the further Knowledge of that Truth in his own Time; and if God shall influence this poor Man to convert and instruct the ignorant Savage his Wife, I can never believe that he shall be cast away himself; and have I not Reason then to rejoyce, the nearer any are brought to the Knowledge of Christ, tho' they may not be brought quite home into the Bosom of the Catholick Church, just at the time when I may desire it? leaving it to the Goodness of Christ to perfect his Work in his own Time, and his own Way. Certainly I would rejoyce if all the Savages in *America* were brought like this poor Woman to pray to God, tho' they were to be all Protestants at first, rather than they should continue Pagans and Heathens; firmly believing, that he that had be-

stow'd the first Light to them, would further illuminate them with a Beam of his heavenly Grace, and bring them into the Pale of his Church when he should see good.

I was astonish'd at the Sincerity and Temper of this truly pious Papist, as much as I was oppress'd by the Power of his Reasoning; and it presently occur'd to my Thoughts, that if such a Temper was universal, we might be all Catholick Christians, whatever Church or particular Profession we join'd to, or join'd in; that a Spirit of Charity would soon work us all up into right Principles; and in a Word, as he thought that the like Charity would make us all Catholicks, so I told him I believ'd, had all the Members of his Church the like Moderation, they would soon be all Protestants. And there we left that Part, for we never disputed at all.

However, I talk'd to him another way, and *taking him by the Hand*, my Friend, says I, I wish all the Clergy of the *Roman Church* were blest with such Moderation, and had an equal Share of your Charity. I am entirely of your Opinion; but I must tell you, that if you should preach such Doctrine in *Spain* or *Italy*, they would put you into the *Inquisition*.

It may be so, said he, I know not what they might do in *Spain* or *Italy*, but I will not say they would be the better Christians for that Severity, for I am sure there is no Heresy in too much Charity.

Well, as *Will. Atkins* and his Wife were gone, our Business there was over; so we went back our own Way; and when we came back, we found them waiting to be call'd in; observing this, I ask'd my Clergyman if we should discover to him that we had seen him under the Bush, or no; and it was his Opinion we should not; but that we should talk to him first, and hear what he would say to us;

so we call'd him in alone, no Body being in the Place but our selves; and I began with him thus:

Will. Atkins, said I, prithee what Education had you? What was your Father?

W. A. A better Man than ever I shall be. *Sir*, my Father, was a Clergyman.

R. C. What Education did he give you?

W. A. He would have taught me well, *Sir*; but I despis'd all Education, Instruction, or Correction, like a Beast as I was.

R. C. It's true, *Solomon* says, *He that despises Reproof is brutish*.

W. A. Ay, *Sir*, I was brutish indeed, I murder'd my Father: For God's sake, *Sir*, talk no more about that, *Sir*, I murder'd my poor Father.

Pr. Ha! a Murderer!*

**Here the Priest started (for I interpreted every Word as he spoke it) and look'd pale. It seems he believ'd that Will. had really kill'd his own Father.*

R. C. No, no, *Sir*, I do not understand him so. *Will. Atkins*, explain yourself, you did not kill your Father, did you, with your own Hands?

W. A. No, *Sir*, I did not cut his Throat, but I cut the Thread of all his Comforts, and shorten'd his Days; I broke his Heart by the most ungrateful unnatural Return, for the most tender affectionate Treatment that ever Father gave, or Child could receive.

R. C. Well, I did not ask you about your Father, to extort this Confession; I pray God give you Repentance for it, and forgive you that, and all your other Sins; but I ask'd you, because I see, that tho' you have not much Learn-

ing, yet you are not so ignorant as some are in Things that are Good; that you have known more of Religion a great deal than you have practised.

W. A. Tho' you, Sir, did not extort the Confession that I make about my Father, Conscience does; and whenever we come to look back upon our Lives, the Sins against our indulgent Parents are certainly the first that touch us; the Wounds they make lie deepest, and the Weight they leave will lie heaviest upon the Mind, of all the Sins we can commit.

R. C. You talk too feelingly and sensibly for me *Atkins*; I cannot bear it.

W. A. You bear it, Master! I dare say you know nothing of it.

R. C. Yes, *Atkins*, every Shore, every Hill, nay, I may say, every Tree in this Island is witness to the Anguish of my Soul, for my Ingratitude and base Usage of a good tender Father; a Father much like yours, by your Description; and I murder'd my Father as well as you, *Will. Atkins*, but I think for all that, my Repentance is short of yours too* by a great deal.

**I would have said more, if I could have restrain'd my Passions; but I thought this poor Man's Repentance was so much sincerer than mine, that I was going to leave off the Discourse and retire, for I was surpriz'd with what he said; and thought, that instead of my going about to teach and instruct him, the Man was made a Teacher and Instructor to me, in a most surprising and unexpected manner.*

I laid all this before the young Clergyman, who was greatly affected with it, and said to me; Did I not say, Sir,

that when this Man was converted, he would preach to us all? I tell you, Sir, if this one Man be made a true Penitent, here will be no need of me, he will make Christians of all in the Island. But having a little compos'd my self, I renew'd my Discourse with *Will. Atkins*.

But, *Will*, said I, How comes the Sense of this Matter to touch you just now?

W. A. Sir, you have set me about a Work that has struck a Dart thro' my very Soul; I have been talking about God and Religion to my Wife, in Order, as you directed me, to make a Christian of her, and she has preach'd such a Sermon to me, as I shall never forget while I live.

R. C. No, no, it is not your Wife has preach'd to you; but when you were moving religious Arguments to her, Conscience has flung them back upon you.

W. A. Ay, Sir, with such a Force as is not to be resisted.

R. C. Pray *Will*. let us know what pass'd between you and your Wife, for I know something of it already.

W. A. Sir, it is impossible to give you a full Account of it; I am too full to hold it, and yet have no Tongue to express; but let her have said what she will, and tho' I cannot give you an Account of it, this I can tell you of it, that I resolve to amend and reform my Life.

R. C. But tell us some of it. How did you begin *Will*? For this has been an extraordinary Case, that's certain. She has preach'd a Sermon, indeed, if she has wrought this upon you.

W. A. Why, I first told her the Nature of our Laws about Marriage, and what the Reasons were, that Men and Women were oblig'd to enter into such Compacts, as it was neither in the Power of one or other to break; that otherwise, Order and Justice could not be maintain'd,

and Men would run from their Wives, and abandon their Children, mix confusedly with one another, and neither Families be kept entire, or Inheritances be settled by legal Descent.

R. C. You talk like a Civilian, *Will*; could you make her understand what you meant by Inheritance and Families? they know no such Thing among the Savages, but marry any how, without regard to Relation, Consanguinity, or Family; Brother and Sister, nay, as I have been told, even the Father and Daughter, and Son and the Mother.

W. A. I believe, Sir, you are misinform'd, and my Wife assures me of the contrary, and that they abhor it; perhaps, for any farther Relations they may not be so exact as we are; but she tells me they never touch one another in the near Relations you speak of.

R. C. Well, what did she say, to what you told her.

W. A. She said, she lik'd it very well, and it was much better than in her Country.

R. C. But did you tell her what Marriage was?

W. A. Ay, ay, there began all our Dialogue. I ask'd her if she would be marry'd to me our Way? She ask'd me what Way that was? I told her Marriage was appointed by God; and here we had a strange Talk together, indeed, as ever Man and Wife had I believe.

N.B. *This Dialogue between W. Atkins and his Wife, as I took it down in Writing, just after he told it me, was as follows.*

Wife. Appointed by your God! Why have you a God in your Country?

W. A. Yes, my Dear, God is in every Country.

Wife. No you God in my Country; my Country have the great old *Benamuckee* God.

W. A. Child, I am very unfit to shew you who God is; God is in Heaven, and made the Heaven and the Earth, the Sea, and all that in them is.

Wife. No makee de Earth; no, you God makeall Earth, no make my Country.*

**W. A. laugh'd a little at her Expression of God not making her Country.*

Wife. No Laugh, why Laugh me? This no Thing to Laugh.*

**He was justly reprov'd by his Wife, for she was more serious than he at first.*

W. A. That's true indeed, I will not Laugh any more my Dear.

Wife. Why you say, you God make all?

W. A. Yes, Child, our God made the whole World, and you, and I, and all Things; for he is the only true God, there is no God but him, he lives for ever in Heaven.

Wife. Why you no tell me long ago?

W. A. That's true indeed, but I have been a wicked Wretch, and have not only forgotten to acquaint thee with any Thing before, but have lived without God in the World my self.

Wife. What have you de great God in you Country, you no kno' him? No say O to him? No do good Thing for him? That no possible!

W. A. It is too true; tho' for all that, we live as if there was no God in Heaven, or that he had no Power on Earth.

Wife. But why, God let you do so? Why he no makee you good live.

W. A. It is all our own Fault.

Wife. But you say me, he is Great, much Great, have much great Power; can makee kill, when he will; why he no makee kill when you no serve him? No say O to him? No be good Mans.

W. A. That is true; he might strike me Dead, and I ought to expect it, for I have been a wicked Wretch, that is true; but God is merciful, and does not deal with us as we deserve.

Wife. But then, do not you tell God Tankee for that too.

W. A. No, indeed, I havenot thank'd God for his Mercy, any more than I have fear'd God for his Power.

Wife. Than you God no God; me no think, believe, he be such one, great much Power, Strong; no makee kill you tho' you makee him much Angry.

W. A. What! Will my wicked Life hinder you from believing in God? what a dreadful Creature am I; and what a sad Truth is it, that the horrid Lives of Christians hinders the Conversion of Heathens?

Wife. How me tink you have great much God* up there, and yet no do well, no do good Thing? can he tell? Sure he no tell what you do.

**She points up to Heaven.*

W. A. Yes, yes, he knows and sees all Things; he hears us speak, sees what we do, knows what we think, tho' we do not speak.

Wife. What! he no hear you swear, curse, speak the great Damn.

W. A. Yes, yes, he hears it all.

Wife. Where be then the muchee great Power Strong.

W. A. He is merciful, that's all we can say for it; and

this proves him to be the true God; he is God and not Man; and therefore we are not consum'd.*

** Here Will. Atkins told us he was struck with Horror, to think how he could tell his Wife so clearly that God sees, and hears, and knows the secret Thoughts of the Heart, and all that we do; and yet that he had dar'd to do all the vile Things he had done.*

Wife. Merciful! what you call that?

W. A. He is our Father and Maker, and he pities and spares us.

Wife. So then he never makee kill, never angry when you do wicked; then he no good himself, or no great able.

W. A. Yes, yes, *my Dear*, he is infinitely good, and infinitely great, and able to punish too, and sometimes to shew his Justice and Vengeance, he lets fly his Anger to destroy Sinners, and make Examples; many are cut off in their Sins.

Wife. But no make kill you yet, then he tell you *may be* that he no make you kill, so you make de Bargain with him, you do bad Thing, he no be angry at you, when he be angry at other Mans.

W. A. No indeed, my Sins are all Presumptions upon his Goodness; and he would be infinitely just if he destroy'd me, as he has done other Men.

Wife. Well, and yet no kill, no makee you dead, what you say to him for that, you no tell him Tankee for all that too?

W. A. I am an unthankful, ungrateful Dog, that's true.

Wife. Why? He no makee you much good better, you say he makee you.

W. A. He made me as he made all the World; 'tis I

have deform'd my self, and abus'd his Goodness, and made my self an abominable Wretch.

Wife. I wish you makee God know me, I no makee him angry, I no do bad wicked Thing.

Here Will. Atkins said his Heart sunk within him, to hear a poor untaught Creature desire to be taught to know God, and he such a wicked Wretch, that he could not say one Word to her about God, but what the Reproach of his own Carriage would make most irrational to her to believe; nay, that already she had told him, that she could not believe in God, because he that was so wicked was not destroy'd.

W. A. My Dear, you mean, you wish I could teach you to know God, not God to know you; for he knows you already, and every Thought in your Heart.

Wife. Why then he know what I say to you now? He know me wish to know him; how shall me know who makee me?

W. A. Poor Creature, he must teach thee, I cannot teach thee; I'll pray to him to teach thee to know him, and to forgive me that I am unworthy to teach thee.

The poor Fellow was in such an Agony at her desiring him to make her know God, and her wishing to know him, that, he said, he fell down on his Knees before her, and pray'd to God to enlighten her Mind with the saving Knowledge of Jesus Christ, and to pardon his Sins, and accept of his being the unworthy Instrument of instructing her in the Principles of Religion; after which, he sat down by her again, and their Dialogue went on. N.B. This was the Time when we saw him kneel down, and lift up his Hands.

Wife. What you put down the Knee for? What you hold up the Hand for? What you say? Who you speak to? What is all that?

W. A. My Dear, I bow my Knees in Token of my Submission to him that made me; I said O to him, as you call it, and as you say, your old Men do to their Idol *Benamukee*; that is, I pray'd to him.

Wife. What you say O to him for?

W. A. I pray'd to him to open your Eyes, and your Understanding, that you may know him, and be accepted by him.

Wife. Can he do that too?

W. A. Yes, he can, he can do all Things.

Wife. But now he hear what you say?

W. A. Yes, he has bid us pray to him, and promis'd to hear us.

Wife. Bid you pray? When he bid you? How he bid you? What! you hear him speak?

W. A. No, we do not hear him speak, but he has reveal'd himself many Ways to us.

Here he was at a great Loss to make her understand, that God has reveal'd himself to us by his Word, and what his Word was: But at last he told it her thus.

W. A. God has spoken to some good Men in former Days, even from Heaven, by plain Words; and God has inspir'd good Men by his Spirit; and they have written all his Laws down in a Book.

Wife. Me no understand that, where is Book?

W. A. Alas, my poor Creature, I have not this Book; but I hope I shall one Time or other get it for you, and help you to read it.

Here he embrac'd her with great Affection; but with inexpressible Grief, that he had not a Bible.

Wife. But how you makee me know, that God teachee them to write that Book?

W. A. By the same Rule that we know him to be God.

Wife. What Rule, what Way you know him?

W. A. Because he teaches and commands nothing but what is good, righteous, and holy; and tends to make us perfectly good, as well as perfectly happy; and because he forbids and commands us to avoid all that is wicked, that is evil in it self, or evil in its Consequences.

Wife. That me would understand, that me fain see; if he teachee all good Thing, forbid all wicked Thing, he reward all good Thing, punish all wicked Thing, he make all Thing, he give all Thing, he hear me when I say O to him, as you go do just now; he makee me good, if I wish be good, he spare me, no makee kill me, when I no be good; all this you say he do, yet he be great God; me take, think, believe him be great God; me say O to him too with you my Dear.

Here the poor Man could forbear no longer; but raising her up, made her kneel by him, and he pray'd to God aloud to instruct her in the Knowledge of himself by his Spirit, and that by some good Providence, if possible, she might sometime or other come to have a Bible, that she might read the Word of God, and be taught by it to know him.

This was the Time that we saw him lift her up by the Hand, and saw him kneel down by her, as above.

They had several other Discourses it seems after this, too long to set down here; and particularly she made him promise, that since he confest his own Life had been a

wicked abominable Course of Provocation against God, that he would reform it, and not make God angry any more, least he should *make him dead*, as she call'd it, and then she should be left alone, and never be taught to know this God better; and least he should be miserable, as he had told her wicked Men should be after Death.

This was a strange Account, and very affecting to us both, but particularly to the young Clergyman; he was indeed wonderfully surpriz'd with it, but under the greatest Affliction imaginable, that he could not talk to her, that he could not speak *English* to make her understand him; and as she spoke but very broken *English*, he could not understand her; However he turn'd himself to me, and told me, that he believed there must be more to do with this Woman than to marry her: I did not understand him at first, but at length he explain'd himself, (*viz.*) that she ought to be Baptiz'd.

I agreed with him in that Part readily, and was for going about it presently: No, no, hold Sir, *said he*, tho' I would have her be Baptiz'd by all Means, yet I must observe, that *Will. Atkins*, her Husband, has indeed brought her in a wonderful Manner to be willing to embrace a religious Life, and has given her just Ideas of the Being of a God, of his Power, Justice, Mercy; yet I desire to know of him, if he has said any Thing to her of Jesus Christ, and of the Salvation of Sinners, of the Nature of Faith in him, and Redemption by him, of the Holy Spirit, the Resurrection, the last Judgment, and a future State.

I call'd *Will. Atkins* again, and ask'd him; but the poor Fellow fell immediately into Tears, and told us he had said something to her of all those things, but that he was himself so wicked a Creature, and his own Conscience so reproach'd him with his horrid ungodly Life, that he

trembled at the Apprehensions, that her Knowledge of him, should lessen the Attention she should give to those Things, and make her rather contemn Religion than receive it: But he was assur'd, he said, that her Mind was so dispos'd to receive due Impressions of all those Things, that if I would but discourse with her, she would make it appear to my Satisfaction, that my Labour would not be lost upon her.

Accordingly I call'd her in, and placing my self as Interpreter between my religious Priest and the Woman, I entreated him to begin with her; but sure such a Sermon was never preach'd by a popish Priest in these latter Ages of the World; and, *as I told him*, I thought he had all the Zeal, all the Knowledge, all the Sincerity of a Christian, without the Error of a *Roman Catholick*; and that I took him to be such a Clergy-man, as the *Roman* Bishops were before the Church of *Rome* assum'd spiritual Sovereignty over the Consciences of Men.

In a Word, he brought the poor Woman to embrace the Knowledge of Christ, and of Redemption by him, not with Wonder and Astonishment only, as she did the first Notions of a God, but with Joy and Faith, with an Affection and a surprizing Degree of Understanding, scarce to be imagin'd, much less to be express'd; and at her own Request she was Baptiz'd.

When he was preparing to Baptize her, I entreated him that he would perform that Office with some Caution, that the Man might not perceive he was of the *Roman* Church, if possible, because of other ill Consequences which might attend a Difference among us in that very Religion, which we were instructing the other in. He told me, that as he had no consecrated Chapel, no proper Things for the Office, I should see he would do it in a

Manner that I should not know by it, that he was a *Roman* Catholick my self, if I had not known it before: And so he did; for saying only some Words over to himself in *Latin*, which I could not understand, he pour'd a whole Dish-ful of Water upon the Woman's Head, pronouncing in *French*, very loud, MARY, *which was the Name her Husband desir'd me to give her; for I was her Godfather*, I Baptize thee in the Name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost; so that none could know any Thing by it, what Religion he was of: He gave the Benediction afterwards in *Latin*; but either *Will. Atkins* did not know but it was in *French*, or else did not take Notice of it at that time.

As soon as this was over we married them; and after the Marriage was over he turn'd himself to *Will. Atkins*, and in a very affectionate Manner exhorted him, not only to persevere in that good Disposition he was in, but to support the Convictions that were upon him by a Resolution to reform his Life; told him it was in vain to say he repented, if he did not forsake his Crimes: Represented to him, how God had honoured him with being the Instrument of bringing his Wife to the Knowledge of the Christian Religion, and that he should be careful he did not dishonour the Grace of God, and that if he did, he would see the Heathen a better Christian than himself, the Savage converted, and the Instrument cast away.

He said a great many good Things to them both, and then recommending them in a few Words to God's Goodness, gave them the Benediction again, I repeating every Thing to them in *English*, and thus ended the Ceremony: I think it was the most pleasant, agreeable Day to me that ever I passed in my whole Life.

But my Clergy-man had not done yet; his Thoughts

hung continually upon the Conversion of the seven and thirty Savages, and fain he would have stay'd upon the Island to have undertaken it; but I convinc'd him, first, that his Undertaking was impracticable in it self; and secondly, that perhaps I would put it into a Way of being done in his Absence to his Satisfaction; of which, by and by.

Having thus brought the Affair of the Island to a narrow Compass, I was preparing to go on board the Ship, when the young Man who I had taken out of the famish'd Ship's Company, came to me, and told me, he understood I had a Clergyman with me, and that I had caused the *English* Men to be married to the Savages, whom they called Wives; that he had a Match too, which he desir'd might be finish'd before I went, between two Christians, which he hop'd would not be disagreeable to me.

I knew this must be the young Woman who was his Mother's Servant, for there was no other Christian Woman on the Island; so I began to persuade him not to do any Thing of that Kind rashly, or because he found himself in this solitary Circumstance: I represented to him, that he had some considerable Substance in the World, and good Friends, as I understood by himself, and by his Maid also; that the Maid was not only poor and a Servant, but was unequal to him, she being six or seven and twenty Years old, and he not above seventeen or eighteen; that he might very probably, with my Assistance, make a remove from this Wilderness, and come into his own Country again, and that then it would be a thousand to one but he would repent his Choice; and the Dislike of that Circumstance might be disadvantageous to both: I was going to say more, but he interrupted me, smiling, and told me, with a great deal of Modesty, that I mistook

in my Guesses, that he had nothing of that Kind in his Thoughts, his present Circumstance being melancholly and disconsolate enough; and he was very glad to hear that I had Thoughts of putting them in a Way to see their Country again, and nothing should have put him upon staying there, but that the Voyage I was going was so exceeding long and hazardous, and would carry him quite out of the Reach of all his Friends; that he had nothing to desire of me, but that I would settle him in some little Property in the Island where he was, give him a Servant or two and some few Necessaries, and he would settle himself here like a Planter, waiting the good Time, when if ever I return'd to *England*, I would redeem him, and hop'd I would not be unmindful of him when I came into *England*; that he would give me some Letters to his Friends in *London*, to let them know how good I had been to him, and in what Part of the World, and what Circumstance I had left him in; that he promised me, that whenever I redeemed him, the Plantation, and all the Improvements he had made upon it, let the Value be what it would, should be wholly mine.

His Discourse was very prettily deliver'd, considering his Youth, and was the more agreeable to me, because he told me positively the Match was not for himself: I gave him all possible Assurances, that if I liv'd to come safe to *England*, I would deliver his Letters and do his Business effectually, and that he might depend I would never forget the Circumstance I had left him in; but still I was impatient to know who was the Person to be married, upon which he told me it was my *Jack of all Trades*, and his Maid *Susan*.

I was most agreeably surpriz'd, when he nam'd the Match, for indeed I thought it very suitable; the Charac-

ter of that Man I have given already; and as for the Maid, she was a very honest, modest, sober and religious young Woman, had a very good Share of Sense, was agreeable enough in her Person, spoke very handsomely and to the Purpose, always with Decency and good Manners, and not backward to speak when any Thing required it, or impertinently forward to speak when it was not her Business; very handy and housewifely in any Thing that was before her; an excellent Manager, and fit indeed to have been Governess to the whole Island; she knew very well how to behave to all kind of Folks she had about her, and to better, if she had found any there.

The Match being proposed in this Manner, we married them the same Day, and as I was Father at the Altar, as I may say, and gave her away, so I gave her a Portion; for I appointed her and her Husband a handsome large Space of Ground for their Plantation; and indeed this Match and the Proposal the young Gentleman made to give him a small Property in the Island, put me upon parcelling it out amongst them, that they might not quarrel afterwards about their Situation.

This sharing out the Land to them, I left to *Will. Atkins*, who indeed was now grown a most sober, grave, managing Fellow, perfectly reform'd, exceeding Pious and Religious, and as far as I may be allow'd to speak positively in such a Case, I verily believe, was a true sincere Penitent.

He divided Things so justly, and so much to every one's Satisfaction, that they only desired one general Writing under my Hand for the whole, which I caused to be drawn up and sign'd and seal'd to them, setting out the Bounds and Situation of every Man's Plantation, and testifying that I gave them thereby severally a Right to

the whole Possession and Inheritance of the respective Plantations or Farms, with their Improvements to them and their Heirs, reserving all the rest of the Island as my own Property, and a certain Rent for every particular Plantation after eleven Years, if I, or any one from me, or in my Name came to demand it, producing an attested Copy of the same Writing.

As to the Government and Laws among them, I told them I was not capable of giving them better Rules, than they were able to give themselves, only made them promise me to live in Love and good Neighbourhood with one another; and so I prepared to leave them.

One Thing I must not omit, and this is, that being now settled in a Kind of Common-Wealth among themselves, and having much Business in Hand, it was but odd to have seven and thirty *Indians* live in a Nook of the Island independent, and indeed un-employ'd; for excepting the providing themselves Food, which they had Difficulty enough in too, sometimes, they had no manner of Business or Property to manage: I propos'd therefore to the Governour *Spaniard*, that he should go to them with *Friday's* Father, and propose to them to remove, and either plant for themselves, or take them into their several Families as Servants to be maintain'd for their Labour, but without being absolute Slaves, for I would not admit them to make them Slaves by Force by any Means, because they had their Liberty given them by Capitulation, and as it were Articles of Surrender, which they ought not to break.

They most willingly embrac'd the Proposal, and came all very chearfully along with him; so we allotted them Land, and Plantations, which three or four accepted of, but all the rest chose to be employ'd as Servants in the

several Families we had settled; and thus my Colony was in a Manner settled, as follows: The *Spaniards* possess'd my original Habitation, which was the Capital City, and extended their Plantations all along the Side of the Brook, which made the Creek that I have so often describ'd, as far as my Bower; and as they increas'd their Culture, it went always Eastward; the *English* liv'd in the North-East Part, where *W. Atkins*, and his Comrades began, and came on Southward, and South-West, towards the back Part of the *Spaniards*, and every Plantation had a great Addition of Land to take in, if they found Occasion, so that they need not jostle one another for want of Room.

All the East End of the Island was left uninhabited, that if any of the Savages should come on Shore there, only for their usual customary Barbarities, they might come and go, if they disturb'd no Body, no Body would disturb them; and no doubt but they were often ashore, and went away again; for I never heard that the Planters were ever attack'd or disturb'd any more.

It now came into my Thoughts, that I had hinted to my Friend the Clergy-man, that the Work of Converting the Savages, might perhaps be set on Foot in his Absence, to his Satisfaction; and I told him, that now I thought it was put in a fair Way; for the Savages being thus divided among the Christians, if they would but everyone of them do their Part with those which came under their Hands, I hop'd it might have a very good Effect.

He agreed presently in that, if, *said he*, they will do their Part; but how, *says he*, shall we obtain that of them? I told him, we would call them together, and leave it in Charge with them, or go to them one by one, which he thought best, so we divided it; he to speak to the *Spaniards*, who were all Papists, and I to the *English*, who were

all Protestants; and we recommended it earnestly to them, and made them promise, that they never would make any Distinction of Papist or Protestant, in their exhorting the Savages to turn Christians; but teach them the general Knowledge of the true God, and of their Saviour Jesus Christ; and they likewise promis'd us, that they would never have any Differences or Disputes one with another about Religion.

When I came to *W. Atkins's House*, I may call it so, for such a House, or such a Piece of Basket-Work, I believe, was not standing in the World again; I say, when I came there, I found the young Woman I have mention'd above, and *W. Atkins's Wife*, were become Intimates; and this prudent religious young Woman, had perfected the Work *Will. Atkins* had begun; and tho' it was not above four Days after what I have related, yet the new baptiz'd Savage Woman was made such a Christian, as I have seldom heard of any like her in all my Observation, or Conversation, in the World.

It came next into my Mind in the Morning before I went to them, that amongst all the needful Things I had to leave with them, I had not left them a Bible, in which, I shew'd my self less considering for them, than my good Friend the Widow was for me, when she sent me the Cargo of an hundred Pounds from *Lisbon*, where she pack'd up 3 Bibles, and a Prayer-book: However, the good Woman's Charity had a greater Extent than ever she imagin'd; for they were reserv'd for the Comfort and Instruction of those, that made much better Use of them than I had done.

I took one of the Bibles in my Pocket, and when I came to *Will. Atkins's Tent or House*, and found the young Woman, and *Atkins's baptiz'd Wife*, had been discours-

ing of Religion together; for *W. Atkins*, told it me, with a great deal of Joy: I ask'd if they were together now, and he said, yes; so I went into the House, and he with me, and we found them together very earnest in Discourse; O Sir, says *Will. Atkins*, when God has Sinners to reconcile to himself, and Aliens to bring Home, he never wants a Messenger; my Wife has got a new Instructor; I knew I was unworthy, as I was incapable of that Work; that young Woman has been sent hither from Heaven; she is enough to convert a whole Island of Savages; the young Woman blush'd, and rose up to go away, but I desir'd her to sit still; I told her, she had a good Work upon her Hands, and I hop'd God would bless her in it.

We talk'd a little, and I did not perceive they had any Book among them, tho' I did not ask; but I put my Hand in my Pocket, and pull'd out my Bible; here, says I, to *Atkins*, I have brought you an Assistant that perhaps you had not before; the Man was so confounded, that he was not able to speak for some Time; but recovering himself, he takes it with both his Hands, and turning to his Wife, here, *my Dear*, says he; did not I tell you, our God, tho' he lives above, could hear what we said? Here's the Book I pray'd for, when you and I kneel'd down under the Bush; now God has heard us, and sent it; when he had said so, the Man fell into such Transports of a passionate Joy, that between the Joy of having it, and giving God Thanks for it, the Tears run down his Face like a Child that was crying.

The Woman was surprised, and was like to have run into a Mistake, that none of us were aware of; for she firmly believ'd God had sent the Book upon her Husband's Petition; It is true, that providentially it was so, and might be taken so in a consequent Sense; but I believe

it would have been no difficult Matter at that Time, to have persuaded the poor Woman to have believ'd, that an express Messenger came from Heaven, on purpose to bring that individual Book; but it was too serious a Matter, to suffer any Delusion to take Place; so I turn'd to the young Woman and told her we did not desire to impose upon the new Convert, in her first, and more ignorant understanding of Things; and begg'd her to explain to her, that God may be very properly said to answer our Petitions, when in the Course of his Providence, such Things are in a particular Manner brought to pass, as we petition'd for; but we do not expect Returns from Heaven, in a miraculous and particular Manner, and that it is our Mercy, that it is not so.

This the young Woman did afterwards effectually; so that there was, I assure you, no Priest-craft used here; and I should have thought it one of the most unjustifiable Frauds in the World, to have had it so; but the Surprise of Joy upon *Will. Atkins*, is really not to be expressed; and there we may be sure, there was no Delusion: Sure, no Man was ever more thankful in the World for any Thing of its Kind, than he was for this Bible; nor I believe, never any Man was glad of a Bible from a better Principle; and tho' he had been a most profligate Creature, desperate, headstrong, outrageous, furious, and wicked to a great Degree; yet this Man is a standing Rule to us all, for the well instructing Children, (*viz.*) that Parents should never give over to teach and instruct, or ever despair of the Success of their Endeavours, let the Children be ever so obstinate, refractory, or to Appearance, insensible of Instruction; for if ever God in his Providence, touches the Consciences of such, the Force of their Education returns upon them, and the early Instruction of Parents

is not lost; tho' it may have been many Years laid asleep; but some Time or other, they may find the Benefit of it.

Thus it was with this poor Man; however ignorant he was, or divested of Religion and Christian Knowledge: He found he had some to do with now, more ignorant than himself; and that the least Part of the Instruction of his good Father that could now come to his Mind, was of Use to him.

Among the rest it occur'd to him, he said, how his Father us'd to insist much upon the inexpressible Value of the Bible; the Privilege and Blessing of it to Nations, Families, and Persons; but he never entertain'd the least Notion of the Worth of it, till now; when being to talk to Heathens, Savages, and Barbarians, he wanted the Help of the written Oracle for his Assistance.

The young Woman was very glad of it also for the present Occasion, tho' she had one, and so had the Youth on board our Ship among their Goods, which were not yet brought on Shore; and now having said so many Things of this young Woman, I cannot omit telling one Story more of her, and my self, which has something in it very informing and remarkable.

I have related, to what Extremity the poor young Woman was reduced; how her Mistress was starv'd to Death, and did die on board that unhappy Ship we met at Sea; and how the whole Ship's Company being reduc'd to the last Extremity; the Gentlewoman, and her Son, and this Maid, were first hardly used as to Provisions, and at last totally neglected and starved; that is to say, brought to the last Extremity of Hunger.

One Day being discoursing with her upon the Extremities they suffer'd, I ask'd her if she could describe

by what she had felt, what it was to starve, and how it appear'd; she told me, she believ'd she could; and she told her Tale very distinctly thus.

“First, Sir, said she, we had for some Days far'd exceeding hard, and suffer'd very great Hunger; but now at last, we were wholly without Food of any Kind, except Sugar, and a little Wine, and a little Water. The first Day after I had receiv'd no Food at all, I found my self towards Evening, first empty and sickish at my Stomach, and nearer Night mightily inclin'd to yawning and sleepy; I laid down on a Couch in the great Cabin to sleep, and slept about three Hours, and awak'd a little refresh'd; having taken a Glass of Wine when I lay down; after being about three Hours awake, it being about five a-Clock in the Morning, I found my self empty, and my Stomach sickish, and lay'd down again, but could not sleep at all, being very faint, and ill; and thus I continu'd all the second Day, with a strange Variety, first Hungry, then sick again, with reachings to vomit; the second Night being oblig'd to go to Bed again, without any Food, more than a Draught of fair Water; and being asleep, I dream'd I was at *Barbadoes*, and that the Market was mightily stock'd with Provisions; that I bought some for my Mistress, and went and din'd very heartily.

“I thought my Stomach was as full after this as any would have been after, or at a good Dinner; but when I wak'd, I was exceedingly sunk in my Spirits, to find my self in the extremity of Famine: The last Glass of Wine we had, I drank, and put Sugar in it, because, of its having some Spirit to supply Nourishment; but there being no Substance in the Stomach for the digesting Office to work upon, I found the only Effect of the Wine was, to raise disagreeable Fumes from the Stomach, into the Head;

and I lay, as they told me, stupid, and senseless, as one drunk for some Time.

“The third Day in the Morning, after a Night of strange and confus’d inconsistent Dreams; and rather dozing than sleeping, I wak’d, ravenous and furious, with Hunger; and I question, had not my Understanding return’d and conquer’d it? I say, I question whether if I had been a Mother, and had had a little Child with me, its Life would have been safe or not?

“This lasted about three Hours; during which Time I was twice raging mad as any Creature in *Bedlam*, as my young Master told me, and as he can now inform you.

“In one of these Fits of Lunacy or Distraction, whether by the Motion of the Ship, or some Slip of my Foot, I know not; I fell down, and struck my Face against the Corner of a Palat Bed in which my Mistress lay; and with the Blow the Blood gush’d out of my Nose; and the Cabin Boy bringing me a little Bason, I sat down and bled into it a great deal; and as the Blood run from me, I came to my self; and the Violence of the Flame or the Fever, I was in, abated, and so did the ravenous Part of the Hunger.

“Then I grew sick, and reach’d to Vomit, but could not; for I had nothing in my Stomach to bring up: After I had bled some Time, I swoon’d, and they all believ’d I was dead; but I came to my self soon after, and then had a most dreadful Pain in my Stomach, not to be described; not like the Cholick, but a gnawing eager Pain for Food; and towards Night it went off with a kind of earnest Wishing or Longing for Food; something like, as I suppose, the Longing of a Woman with Child. I took another Draught of Water with Sugar in it, but my Stomach loathed the Sugar, and brought it all up again; then I

took a Draught of Water without Sugar, and that stay'd with me; and I laid me down upon the Bed, praying most heartily, that it would please God to take me away; and composing my Mind in Hopes of it, I slumber'd a while, and then waking, thought my self dying, being light with Vapours from an empty Stomach, I recommended my Soul then to God, and earnestly wish'd that some Body would throw me into the Sea.

"All this while my Mistress lay by me just as I thought expiring, but bore it with much more Patience than I, and gave the last bit of Bread she had left to her Child, my young Master, who would not have taken it, but she oblig'd him to eat it; and I believe it sav'd his Life.

"Towards the Morning I slept again, and first when I awak'd, I fell into a violent Passion of Crying, and after that had a second Fit of violent Hunger; I got up ravenous, and in a most dreadful Condition; had my Mistress been dead, as much as I lov'd her, I am certain, I should have eaten a Piece of her Flesh, with as much Relish, and as unconcern'd, as ever I did the Flesh of any Creature appointed for Food; and once or twice I was going to bite my own Arm: At last, I saw the Bason in which was the Blood I had bled at my Nose the Day before; I ran to it, and swallow'd it with such Haste, and such a greedy Appetite, as if I had wonder'd no Body had taken it before, and afraid it should be taken from me now.

"Tho' after it was down, the Thoughts of it fill'd me with Horror, yet it check'd the Fit of Hunger, and I drank a Draught of fair Water, and was compos'd and refresh'd for some Hours after it: This was the 4th Day, and thus I held it, 'till towards Night, when within the Compass of three Hours, I had all these several Circumstances over again, one after another, (*viz.*) sick, sleepy, eagerly hun-

gry, Pain in the Stomach, then ravenous again, then sick again, then lunatick, then crying, then ravenous again; and so every quarter of an Hour, and my Strength wasted exceedingly: At Night I laid me down, having no Comfort, but in the Hope that I should die before Morning.

“All this Night I had no Sleep; but the Hunger was now turn’d into a Disease; and I had a terrible Cholick and Griping, by Wind instead of Food, having found its Way into the Bowels; and in this Condition I lay ’till Morning, when I was surpriz’d a little with the Cries and Lamentations of my young Master, who call’d out to me that his Mother was dead: I lifted myself up a little; for I had not Strength to rise, but found she was not dead, tho’ she was able to give very little Signs of Life.

“I had then such Convulsions in my Stomach, for want of some sustenance, that I cannot describe; with such frequent Throws and Pangs of Appetite, that nothing but the Tortures of Death can imitate; and in this Condition I was when I heard the Seamen above cry out, *A Sail, a Sail*, and hallow and jump about, as if they were distracted.

“I was not able to get off from the Bed, and my Mistress much less; and my young Master was so sick, that I thought he had been expiring; so we could not open the Cabin Door, or get any Account what it was that occasion’d such a Combustion, nor had we had any Conversation with the Ship’s Company for two Days; they having told us, that they had not a Mouthful of any Thing to eat in the Ship; and they told us afterwards, they thought we had been dead.

“It was this dreadful Condition we were in when you were sent to save our Lives; and how you found us, Sir, you know as well as I, and better too.”

This was her own Relation, and is such a distinct Account of starving to Death, as I confess, I never met with, and was exceeding entertaining to me; I am the rather apt to believe it to be a true Account, because the Youth gave me an Account of a good Part of it; tho' I must own, not so distinct and so feelingly as his Maid; and the rather, because it seems his Mother fed him at the Price of her own Life: But the poor Maid, tho' her Constitution being stronger than that of her Mistress, who was in Years, and a weakly Woman too, she might struggle harder with it; I say, the poor Maid might be supposed to feel the Extremity something sooner than her Mistress, who might be allowed to keep the last Bits something longer than she parted with any to relieve the Maid. No Question, as the Case is here related, if our Ship, or some other, had not so providentially met them, a few Days more would have ended all their Lives, unless they had prevented it by eating one another; and even, that as their Case stood, would have served them but a little while, they being 500 Leagues from any Land, or any Possibility of Relief, other than in the miraculous Manner it happen'd: But this is by the Way; I return to my Disposition of Things among the People.

And, *First*, It is to be observ'd here, That for many Reasons I did not think fit to let them know any Thing of the Sloop I had fram'd, and which I thought of setting up among them; for I found, *at least at my first coming*, such Seeds of Divisions among them, that I saw it plainly had I set up the Sloop, and left it among them, they would upon every light Disgust have separated, and gone away from one another, or perhaps have turned Pirates, and so made the Island a Den of Thieves, instead of a Plantation of sober and religious People, so as I intended it; nor did

I leave the two Pieces of Brass Cannon that I had on Board, or the two Quarter-Deck Guns, that my Nephew took extraordinarily for the same Reason: I thought it was enough to qualify them for a defensive War against any that should invade them; but not to set them up for an offensive War, or to encourage them to go Abroad to attack others, which in the End would only bring Ruin and Destruction upon themselves and all their Undertaking: I reserv'd the Sloop therefore, and the Guns, for their Service another Way, as I shall observe in its Place.

I have now done with the Island: I left them all in good Circumstances, and in a flourishing Condition, and went on board my Ship again the [fifth] day of [*May*,] having been five and twenty Days among them; and as they were all resolv'd to stay upon the Island 'till I came to remove them, I promis'd to send some further Relief from the *Brasils*, if I could possibly find an Opportunity; and particularly I promis'd to send them some Cattel, such as Sheep, Hogs, and Cows: For as to the two Cows and Calves which I brought from *England*, we had been oblig'd by the Length of our Voyage to kill them at Sea, for want of Hay to feed them.

The next Day, giving them a Salute of five Guns at Parting, we set sail, and arriv'd at the Bay of *All-Saints* in the *Brasils* in about 22 Days; meeting nothing remarkable in our Passage, but this, That about three Days after we sail'd, being becalm'd, and the Current setting strong to the E.N.E. running, as it were, into a Bay or Gulph on the Land Side, we were driven something out of our Course, and once or twice our Men cry'd Land to the Eastward; but whether it was the Continent or Islands, we could not tell by any Means.

But the third Day towards Evening, the Sea smooth,

and the Weather calm, we saw the Sea, as it were, cover'd towards the Land with something very black, not being able to discover what it was, 'till after some Time, our chief Mate going up the main Shrowds a little Way, and looking at them with a Perspective, cry'd out it was an Army. I could not imagine what he meant by an Army, and spoke a little hastily, calling the Fellow a Fool, or some such Word: Nay, Sir, *says he*, don't be angry, for 'tis an Army and a Fleet too; for I believe there are a thousand Canoes, and you may see them paddle along, and they are coming towards us too, apace.

I was a little surpriz'd then indeed, and so was my Nephew, the Captain; for he had heard such terrible Stories of them in the Island, and having never been in those Seas before, that he could not tell what to think of it, but said two or three Times, we should all be devour'd. I must confess, considering we were becalm'd, and the Current set strong towards the Shore, I lik'd it the worse: However, I bad him not be afraid, but bring the Ship to an Anchor, as soon as we came so near to know that we must engage them.

The Weather continu'd calm, and they came on apace towards us; so I gave Order to come to an Anchor, and furle all our Sails: As for the Savages, I told them they had nothing to fear but Fire; and therefore they should get their Boats out, and fasten them, one close by the Head, and the other by the Stern, and man them both well, and wait the Issue in that Posture: This I did, that the Men in the Boats might be ready with Skeets and Buckets to put out any Fire these Savages might endeavour to fix to the Out-side of the Ship.

In this Posture we lay by for them, and in a little while they came up with us; but never was such a horrid Sight

seen by Christians: My Mate was much mistaken in his Calculation of their Number, I mean of a thousand Canoes; the most we could make of them when they came up, being about a hundred and six and twenty; and a great many of them too; for some of them had sixteen or seventeen Men in them, and some more; and the least six or seven.

When they came nearer to us, they seem'd to be struck with Wonder and Astonishment, as at a Sight which they had doubtless never seen before; nor could they at first, as we afterwards understood, know what to make of us: They came boldly up however very near to us, and seem'd to go about to row round us; but we call'd to our Men in the Boats, not to let them come too near them.

This very Order brought us to an Engagement with them, without our designing it; for five or six of their large Canoes came so near our Long-Boat, that our Men beckon'd with their Hands to them to keep back, which they understood very well, and went back; but at their Retreat, about 50 Arrows came on board us from those Boats; and one of our Men in the Long-Boat was very much wounded.

However, I call'd to them not to fire by any Means; but we handed down some Deal-Boards into the Boat, and the Carpenter presently set up a kind of a Fence, like waste Boards, to cover them from the Arrows of the Savages, if they should shoot again.

About half an Hour afterwards they came all up in a Body a-stern of us, and pretty near us, so near that we could easily discern what they were, tho' we could not tell their Design: And I easily found they were some of my old Friends, the same Sort of Savages that I had been

used to engage with; and in a little Time more they row'd a little farther out to Sea, 'till they came directly Broad-side with us, and then row'd down strait upon us, 'till they came so near, that they could hear us speak: Upon this I order'd all my Men to keep close, least they should shoot any more Arrows, and made all our Guns ready; but being so near as to be within hearing, I made *Friday* go out upon the Deck, and call out aloud to them in his Language to know what they meant, which accordingly he did; whether they understood him or not, that I knew not: But as soon as he had call'd to them, six of them, who were in the foremost or nighest Boat to us, turns their Canoes from us; and stooping down, shew'd us their naked Backsides, just as if in *English*, saving your Presence, they had *bid us kiss* ——; whether this was a Defiance or Challenge, we know not; or whether it was done in meer Contempt, or as a Signal to the rest; but immediately *Friday* cry'd out they were going to shoot, and unhappily for him poor Fellow; they let fly about 300 of their Arrows, and, to my inexpressible Grief, kill'd poor *Friday*, no other Man being in their Sight.

The poor Fellow was shot with no less than three Arrows, and about three more fell very near him; such unlucky Marksman they were.

I was so enrag'd with the Loss of my old Servant, the Companion of all my Sorrows and Solitudes, that I immediately order'd five Guns to be loaded with small Shot, and four with great, and gave them such a Broad-side, as they had never heard in their Lives before, to be sure.

They were not above half a Cable Length off when we fir'd; and our Gunners took their Aim so well, that three or four of their Canoes were overset, as we had reason to believe, by one Shot only.

The ill Manners of turning up their bare Backsides to us, gave us no great Offence; neither did I know for certain, whether that which would pass for the greatest Contempt among us, might be understood so by them, or not; therefore in Return, I had only resolv'd to have fir'd four or five Guns at them with Powder only, which I knew would fright them sufficiently: But when they shot at us directly with all the Fury they were capable of, and especially as they had kill'd my poor *Friday*, who I so entirely lov'd and valu'd, and who indeed so well deserv'd it; I not only had been justify'd before God and Man, but would have been very glad, if I could, to have overset every Canoe there, and drown'd every one of them.

I can neither tell, how many we kill'd, or how many we wounded at this Broad-side; but sure such a Fright and Hurry never was seen among such a Multitude; there were 13 or 14 of their Canoes split and overset in all, and the Men all set a swimming; the rest frightened out of their Wits, scour'd away as fast as they could, taking but little Care to save those whose Boats were split or spoil'd with our Shot: So I suppose, that they were many of them lost: And our Men took one poor Fellow swimming for his Life, above an Hour after they were all gone.

Our small Shot from our Cannon must needs kill and wound a great many; but, in short, we never knew any Thing how it went with them; for they fled so fast, that in three Hours or thereabouts, we could not see above three or four straggling Canoes; nor did we ever see the rest any more; for a Breeze of Wind springing up the same Evening, we weigh'd and set Sail for the *Brasils*.

We had a Prisoner indeed; but the Creature was so sullen, that he would neither eat or speak; and we all fancy'd he would starve himself to Death: But I took a way

to cure him; for I made them take him and turn him into the Longboat, and make him believe they would toss him into the Sea again, and so leave him where they found him, if he would not speak: Nor would that do; but they really did throw him into the Sea, and came away from him; and then he follow'd them; for he swam like a Cork, and call'd to them in his Tongue, tho' they knew not one Word of what he said: However, at last they took him in again, and then he began to be more tractable; nor did I ever design they should drown him.

We were now under Sail again; but I was the most disconsolate Creature alive, for want of my Man *Friday*, and would have been very glad to have gone back to the Island, to have taken one of the rest from thence for my Occasion, but it could not be; so we went on. We had one Prisoner, as I have said; and 'twas a long while before we could make him understand any thing: But, in time, our Men taught him some *English*, and he began to be a little tractable; afterwards we enquir'd what Country he came from, but could make nothing of what he said; for his Speech was so odd, all Gutterals, and spoke in the Throat in such an hollow odd Manner, that we could never form a Word from him; and we were all of Opinion, that they might speak that Language as well, if they were gagg'd, as otherwise: Nor could we perceive that they had any Occasion, either for Teeth, Tongue, Lips, or Palat; but form'd their Words, just as a hunting Horn forms a Tune with an open Throat; he told us however, some time after, when we had taught him to speak a little *English*, that they were going with their Kings to fight a great Battle. When he said Kings, we ask'd him how many Kings? He said, they were FIVE NATION, we could not make him understand the Plural S. and that they all join'd to go

against *Two Nation*. We ask'd him, what made them come up to us? He said, *to makee te great Wonder look*: Where it is to be observ'd, That all those Natives, as also those of *Africa*, when they learn *English*, they always add two E's at the End of the Words where we use one, and make the Accent upon them, as *makèè takèè*, and the like; and we could not break them of it; nay, I could hardly make *Friday* leave it off, tho' at last he did.

And now I name the poor Fellow once more, I must take my last Leave of him; poor honest *Friday*! We buried him with all the Decency and Solemnity possible, by putting him into a Coffin, and throwing him into the Sea: And I caus'd 'em to fire eleven Guns for him; and so ended the Life of the most grateful, faithful, honest, and most affectionate Servant that ever Man had.

We went now away with a fair Wind for *Brasil*, and in about twelve Days Time we made Land in the Latitude of five Degrees South of the Line, being the North Eastermost Land of all that Part of *America*. We kept on S. by E. in Sight of the Shore four Days, when we made *Cape St. Augustine*, and in three Days came to an Anchor off of the *Bay of All Saints*, the old Place of my Deliverance, from whence came both my good and evil Fate.

Never Ship came to this Part that had less Business than I had; and yet it was with great Difficulty that we were admitted to hold the least Correspondence on Shore, not my Partner himself, who was alive, and made a great Figure among them; not my two Merchants Trustees, not the Fame of my wonderful Preservation in that Island, could obtain me that Favour: But my Partner remembering, that I had given 500 Moidores to the Prior of the Monastery of the *Augustines*, and 272 to the Poor, went to the Monastery, and oblig'd the Prior that then

was, to go to the Governor, and get Leave for me personally, with the Captain and one more besides Eight Seamen, to come on Shore, and no more; and this upon Condition absolutely capitulated for, that we should not offer to land any Goods out of the Ship, or to carry any Person away without Licence.

They were so strict with us, as to landing any Goods, that it was with extream Difficulty that I got on Shore three Bales of *English* Goods, such as fine Broad Cloaths, Stuffs, and some Linnen, which I had brought for a Present to my Partner.

He was a very generous broad hearted Man, tho' like me, he came from little at first; and tho' he knew not that I had the least Design of giving him any Thing, he sent me on Board a Present of fresh Provisions, Wine, and Sweet-meats, worth above 30 Moidores, including some Tobacco, and three or four fine Medals in Gold: But I was even with him in my Present, which, as I have said, consisted of fine broad Cloath, *English* Stuffs, Lace, and fine Hollands: Also I deliver'd him about the Value of 100 *lib. Sterl.* in the same Goods for other Uses; and I oblig'd him to set up the Sloop which I had brought with me from *England*, as I have said, for the Use of my Colony, in order to send the Refreshments I intended to my Plantation.

Accordingly, he got Hands, and finish'd the Sloop in a very few Days, for she was already fram'd, and I gave the Master of her such Instructions, as he could not miss the Place, *nor did he miss them, as I had an Account from my Partner afterwards.* I got him soon loaded with the small Cargo I sent them; and one of our Seamen that had been on Shore with me there, offer'd to go with the Sloop, and settle there upon my Letter to the Governor *Spaniard*, to

allot him a sufficient Quantity of Land for a Plantation; and giving him some Cloaths, and Tools for his Planting-Work, which he said he understood, having been an old Planter at *Maryland*, and a Buckaneer into the Bargain.

I encouraged the Fellow, by granting all he desired; and as an Addition, I gave him the Savage, which we had taken Prisoner of War, to be his Slave, and order'd the Governour *Spaniard* to give him his Share of every thing he wanted, with the rest.

When we came to fit this Man out, my old Partner told me, there was a certain very honest Fellow, a *Brasil* Planter of his Acquaintance, who had fallen into the Displeasure of the Church; I know not what the Matter is with him, *says he*; but on my Conscience, I think he is a Here-tick in his Heart, and he has been obliged to conceal himself for fear of the Inquisition; that he would be very glad of such an Opportunity to make his Escape with his Wife and two Daughters; and if I would let them go to my Island, and allot them a Plantation, he would give them a small Stock to begin with; for the Officers of the Inquisition had seiz'd all his Effects and Estate, and he had nothing left but a little Houshold-Stuff and two Slaves. And, *adds he*, 'Tho' I hate his Principles, yet I would not have him fall into their Hands; for he would assuredly be burnt alive, if he does.

I granted this presently, and join'd my *English* Man with them, and we conceal'd the Man, and his Wife and Daughters on Board our Ship, till the Sloop put out to go to Sea; and then (having put all their Goods on board the Sloop, some time before) we put them on board the Sloop, after he was got out of the Bay.

Our Seaman was mightily pleas'd with this new Partner; and their Stock indeed was much alike rich in Tools,

in Preparations, and a Farm, but nothing to begin with, but as above: However, they carried over with them, which was worth all the rest, some Materials for planting Sugar Canes, with some Plants of Canes; which he, I mean, the *Portugal* Man, understood very well.

Among the rest of the Supplies sent my Tenants in the Island, I sent them by their Sloop, three Milch Cows, and five Calves, about 22 Hogs among 'em, three Sows big with Pig, two Mares, and a Stone-Horse.

For my *Spaniards*, according to my Promise, I engag'd three *Portugal* Women to go, and recommended it to them to marry them, and use them kindly. I could have procured more Women, but I remember'd, that the poor persecuted Man had two Daughters, and there was but five of the *Spaniards* that wanted; the rest had Wives of their own, tho' in another Country.

All this Cargo arriv'd safe, and as you may easily suppose, very welcome to my old Inhabitants, who were now with this Addition between sixty and seventy People, besides little Children; of which, there was a great many: I found Letters at *London* from them all by the Way of *Lisbon*, when I came back to *England*; of which I shall also take some Notice immediately.

I have now done with my Island, and all Manner of Discourse about it; and whoever reads the rest of my Memorandums, would do well to turn his Thoughts entirely from it, and expect to read of the Follies of an old Man, not warn'd by his own Harms, much less by those of other Men, to beware of the like; not cool'd by almost forty Years Misery and Disappointments, not satisfy'd with Prosperity beyond Expectation, not made cautious by Affliction and Distress beyond Imitation.

I had no more Business to go to the *East Indies*, than a

Man at full Liberty, and having committed no Crime, has to go to the Turn-key at *Newgate*, and desire him to lock him up among the Prisoners there, and starve him. Had I taken a small Vessel from *England*, and went directly to the Island; had I loaded her, as I did the other Vessel, with all the Necessaries for the Plantation, and for my People, took a Patent from the Government here, to have secur'd my Property, in Subjection only to that of *England*; had I carried over Cannon and Ammunition, Servants and People, to plant, and taking Possession of the Place, fortified and strengthen'd it in the Name of *England*, and increas'd it with People, as I might easily have done; had I then settl'd my self there, and sent the Ship back, loaden with good Rice, as I might also have done in six Months time, and order'd my Friends to have fitted her out again for our Supply; had I done this, and staid there my self, I had, at least, acted like a Man of common sense; but I was possess'd with a wandring Spirit, scorn'd all Advantages, I pleased my self with being the Patron of those People I placed there, and doing for them in a kind of haughty majestick Way, like an old Patriarchal Monarch; providing for them, as if I had been Father of the whole Family, as well as of the Plantation: But I never so much as pretended to plant in the Name of any Government or Nation, or to acknowledge any Prince, or to call my People Subjects to any one Nation more than another; nay, I never so much as gave the Place a Name; but left it as I found it, belonging to no Man; and the People under no Discipline or Government but my own; who, tho' I had Influence over them as Father and Benefactor, had no Authority or Power, to Act or Command one way or other, farther than voluntary Consent mov'd them to comply. Yet even this, had I stay'd there, would have

done well enough; but as I rambl'd from them, and came there no more, the last Letters I had from any of them, was by my Partners means; who afterwards sent another Sloop to the Place, and who sent me Word, tho' I had not the Letter till five Years after it was written; that they went on but poorly, were Male-content with their long Stay there; That *Will. Atkins* was dead; That five of the *Spaniards* were come away, and that tho' they had not been much molested by the Savages, yet they had had some Skirmishes with them; and that they begg'd of him to write to me, to think of the Promise I had made, to fetch them away, that they might see their own Country again before they dy'd.

But I was gone a *Wild Goose Chase* indeed; and they that will have any more of me, must be content to follow me thro' a new Variety of Follies, Hardships, and Wild Adventures; wherein the Justice of Providence may be duly observed, and we may see how easily Heaven can gorge us with our own Desires; make the strongest of our Wishes be our Affliction, and punish us most severely with those very Things, which we think, it would be our utmost Happiness to be allow'd in.

Let no wise Man flatter himself, with the Strength of his own Judgment, as if he was able to chuse any particular Station of Life for himself: Man, is a short-sighted Creature, sees but a very little Way before him; and as his Passions, are none of his best Friends, so his particular Affections, are generally his worst Counsellors.

I say this, with Respect to the impetuous Desire I had from a Youth, to wander into the World; and how evident it now was, that this Principle was preserv'd in me for my Punishment: How it came on, the Manner, the Circumstance, and the Conclusion of it, it is easie to give you

Historically, and with its utmost Variety of Particulars: But the secret Ends of Divine Power, in thus permitting us, to be hurry'd down the Stream of our own Desires, is only to be understood of those who can listen to the Voice of Providence, and draw religious Consequences from God's Justice, and their own Mistakes.

Be it, I had Business, or no Business, away I went; 'tis no Time now to enlarge any farther upon the Reason, or Absurdity of my own Conduct; but to come to the History, I was embark'd for the Voyage, and the Voyage I went.

I should only add here, that my honest and truly pious Clergyman left me here; a Ship being ready to go to *Lisbon*, he ask'd me leave to go thither, being still, as he observ'd, bound never to finish any Voyage he began: How happy had it been for me, if I had gone with him!

But it was too late now; all things Heaven appoints are best; had I gone with him, I had never had so many things to be thankful for, and you had never heard of the second Part of the Travels and Adventures of *Robin. Crusoe*; so I must leave here the fruitless exclaiming at my self, and go on with my Voyage.

From the *Brasils*, we made directly away over the *Atlantick Sea*, to the *Cape de bon Esperance*, or as we call it, the *Cape of Good Hope*; and had a tolerable good Voyage, our Course generally South-East; now and then a Storm, and some contrary Winds, but my Disasters at Sea were at an end; my future Rubs and cross Events were to befall me on Shore; that it might appear the Land was as well prepar'd to be our scourge, as the Sea; when Heaven, who directs the Circumstances of Things, pleases to appoint it to be so.

Our Ship was on a Trading Voyage, and had a *Supra-Cargo* on board, who was to direct all her Motions after

she arrived at the *Cape*; only being limited to certain Numbers of Days, for Stay, by Charter-party, at the several Ports she was to go to: This was none of my Business, neither did I meddle with it at all; my Nephew, the Captain, and the *Supra-Cargo*, adjusting all those things between them, as they thought fit.

We made no Stay at the *Cape* longer than was needful, to take in fresh Water, but made the best of our Way for the Coast of *Coremandel*; we were indeed inform'd, that a *French* Man of War of fifty Guns, and two large Merchant Ships, were gone for the *Indies*, and as I knew we were at War with *France*, I had some Apprehensions of them; but they went their own Way, and we heard no more of them.

I shall not pester my Account, or the Reader, with Descriptions of Places, Journals of our Voyages, Variations of Compass, Latitudes, Meridian-Distances, Trade-Winds, Situation of Ports, and the like; such as almost all the Histories of long Navigation are full of, and makes the reading tiresome enough, and are perfectly unprofitable to all that read it, except only to those, who are to go to those Places themselves.

It is enough to name the Ports and Places, which we touch'd at, and what occur'd to us upon our passing from one to another. We touch'd first at the Island of *Madagascar*; where, tho' the People are fierce and treacherous, and in particular, very well arm'd with Launces, and Bows, which they use with inconceivable Dexterity; yet we fared very well with them a while, they treated us very civilly; and for some Trifles which we gave them, such as Knives, Scissars, &c. they brought us eleven good fat Bullocks, middling in Size, but very good in Flesh; which we took in, partly for fresh Provisions for our

present spending, and the rest, to Salt for the Ship's Use.

We were obliged to stay here some Time after we had furnish'd our selves with Provisions; and I, that was always too curious, to look into every Nook of the World where ever I came, was for going on Shore as often as I could; it was on the East Side of the Island that we went on Shore, one Evening; and the People, who by the Way are very numerous, came thronging about us, and stood gazing at us at a Distance; but as we had traded freely with them, and had been kindly used, we thought our selves in no Danger; but when we saw the People, we cut three Boughs out of a Tree, and stuck them up at a Distance from us, which it seems, is a Mark in the Country, not only of Truce and Friendship, but when it is accepted, the other Side set up three Poles or Boughs, which is a Signal, that they accept the Truce too; but then, this is a known Condition of the Truce, that you are not to pass beyond their three Poles towards them, nor they to come past your three Poles or Boughs, towards you; so that you are perfectly secure within the three Poles, and all the Space between your Poles and theirs, is allow'd like a Market, for free Converse, Traffick, and Commerce: When you go there, you must not carry your Weapons with you; and if they come into that Space they stick up their Javelines and Launces, all at the first Poles, and come on unarm'd; but if any Violence is offer'd them, and the Truce thereby broken; away they run to the Poles, and lay hold of their Weapons, and then the Truce is at an End.

It happen'd one Evening when we went on Shore, that a greater Number of their People came down than usual, but all was very friendly and civil, and they brought in several Kinds of Provisions, for which we satisfied them,

with such Toys as we had; their Women also brought us Milk, and Roots, and several Things very acceptable to us, and all was quiet; and we made us a little Tent or Hut, of some Boughs of Trees, and lay on Shore all Night.

I know not what was the Occasion, but I was not so well satisfied to lye on Shore as the rest, and the Boat lying at an Anchor, about a Stone-cast from the Land, with two Men in her to take Care of her; I made one of them come on Shore, and getting some Boughs of Trees to cover us also in the Boat, I spread the Sail on the Bottom of the Boat, and lay under the Cover of the Branches of Trees all Night in the Boat.

About two a-clock in the Morning, we heard one of our Men make a terrible Noise on the Shore, calling out for God's Sake, to bring the Boat in, and come and help them, for they were all like to be murther'd; at the same Time I heard the firing of 5 Muskets, which was the Number of the Guns they had, and that, three Times over; for it seems, the Natives here were not so easily frighted with Guns, as the Savages were in *America*, where I had to do with them.

All this while, I knew not what was the Matter; but rousing immediately from Sleep with the Noise, I caus'd the Boat to be thrust in, and resolv'd, with three Fusils we had on board, to land, and assist our Men.

We got the Boat soon to the Shore, but our Men were in too much Haste: For being come to the Shore, they plunged into the Water to get to the Boat with all the Expedition they could, being pursued by between three and four hundred Men: Our Men were but nine in all, and only five of them had Fusils with them; the rest had indeed Pistols and Swords, but they were of small use to them.

We took up seven of our Men, and with Difficulty

enough too, three of them being very ill wounded; and that which was still worse, was, that while we stood in the Boat to take our Men in, we were in as much Danger as they were in on Shore; for they pour'd their Arrows in upon us so thick, that we were fain to barricade the Side of the Boat up with the Benches, and two or three loose Boards, which to our great Satisfaction we had by mere Accident or Providence in the Boat.

And yet, had it been Day-light, they are it seems such exact Marks-men, that if they could have seen but the least Part of any of us, they would have been sure of us; we had by the Light of the Moon a little Sight of them, as they stood pelting us from the Shore with Darts and Arrows; and having got ready our Fire-Arms, we gave them a Volley, that we could hear by the Cries of some of them, that we had wounded several; however, they stood thus in Battle Array on the Shore till break of Day, which we suppose was, that they might see the better to take their Aim at us.

In this Condition we lay, and could not tell how to weigh our Anchor, or set up our Sail, because we must needs stand up in the Boat, and they were as sure to hit us, as we were to hit a Bird in a Tree with small Shot; we made Signals of Distress to the Ship, which, tho' we rode a League off, yet my Nephew the Captain hearing our firing, and by Glasses, perceiving the Posture we lay in, and that we fir'd towards the Shore, pretty well understood us; and weighing Anchor, with all Speed, he stood as near the Shore as he durst with the Ship, and then sent another Boat with ten Hands in her to assist us; but we call'd to them not to come too near, telling them what Condition we were in: However, they stood in nearer to us; and one of the Men taking the End of a Tow-Line in his Hand,

and keeping our Boat between him and the Enemy, so that they could not perfectly see him, swam on board us, and made fast the Line to the Boat; upon which we slipp'd our little Cable, and leaving our Anchor behind, they tow'd us out of Reach of the Arrows, we all the while lying close behind the Barricado we had made.

As soon as we were got from between the Ship and the Shore, that she could lay her Side to the Shore, she run along just by them, and we pour'd in a Broad-side among them loaden with Pieces of Iron and Lead, small Bullets, and such stuff, besides the great Shot, which made a terrible Havock amongst them.

When we were got on board and out of Danger, we had Time to examine into the Occasion of this Fray; and indeed our *Supra-Cargow* who had been often in those Parts, put me upon it; for he said, he was sure the Inhabitants would not have touch'd us after we had made a Truce, if we had not done something to provoke them to it. At length it came out, (*viz.*) that an old Woman who had come to sell us some Milk, had brought it within our Poles with a young Woman, with her, who also brought some Roots or Herbs; and while the old Woman, whether she was Mother to the young Woman or no, they could not tell, was selling us the Milk, one of our Men offer'd some Rudeness to the Wench that was with her, at which the old Woman made a great Noise: However, the Seaman would not quit his Prize, but carried her out of the old Woman's Sight among the Trees, it being almost dark; the old Woman went away without her, and as we suppose, made an Out-cry among the People she came from; who upon Notice, rais'd this great Army upon us in three or four Hours; and it was great odds, but we had been all destroy'd.

One of our Men was killed with a Launce thrown at him just at the beginning of the Attack, as he sally'd out of the Tent they had made; the rest came off free, all but the Fellow who was the Occasion of all the Mischief, who paid dear enough for his black Mistress; for we could not hear what became of him, a great while; we lay upon the Shore two Days after, tho' the Wind presented, and made Signals for him; made our Boat sail up Shore and down Shore, several Leagues, but in vain; so we were oblig'd to give him over, and if he alone had suffer'd for it, the Loss had been the less.

I could not satisfy my self, however, without venturing on Shore once more, to try if I could learn any Thing of him or them; it was the third Night after the Action, that I had a great Mind to learn if I could by any Means what Mischief we had done, and how the Game stood on the *Indians* Side: I was careful to do it in the Dark, lest we should be attack'd again; but I ought indeed to have been sure, that the Men I went with had been under my Command, before I engag'd in a Thing so hazardous and mischievous as I was brought into by it, without my Knowledge or Design.

We took twenty stout Fellows with us as any in the Ship, besides the Supra-Cargo and my self, and we landed two Hours before Midnight, at the same Place where the *Indians* stood drawn up the Evening before; I landed here, because my Design as I have said, was chiefly to see if they had quitted the Field, and if they had left any Marks behind them of the Mischief we had done them; and I thought, if we could surprize one or two of them, perhaps we might get our Man again by Way of Exchange.

We landed without any Noise, and divided our Men into two Bodies, whereof, the Boatswain commanded one,

and I the other; we neither saw or heard any Body stir when we landed, and we march'd up one Body at a Distance from the other, to the Place, but at first could see nothing it being very dark; till by and by, our Boatswain that led the first Party, stumbled and fell over a dead Boy; this made them halt a while, for knowing by the Circumstances that they were at the Place, where the *Indians* had stood, they waited for my coming up here; we concluded to halt till the Moon began to rise, which we knew would be in less than an Hour, when we could easily discern the Havock we had made among them; we told two and thirty Bodies upon the Ground, whereof two were not quite dead: Some had an Arm, and some a Leg shot off, and one his Head; those that were wounded we suppos'd, they had carried away.

When we had made, as I thought, a full Discovery of all we could come at the Knowledge of, I was resolv'd for going on board; but the Boatswain and his Party sent me Word, that they were resolv'd to make a Visit to the *Indian* Town, where these Dogs, as they call'd them, dwelt, and ask'd me to go along with them; and if they could find them, as still they fansied they should, they did not doubt getting a good Booty, and it might be, they might find *Tho. Jeffry* there, *that was the Man's Name we had lost*.

Had they sent to ask my Leave to go, I knew well enough what Answer to have given them; for I would have commanded them instantly on Board, knowing it was not a Hazard fit for us to run, who had a Ship, and Ship-loading in our Charge, and a Voyage to make, which depended very much upon the Lives of the Men; but as they sent me Word they were resolved to go, and only ask'd me and my Company to go along with them; I posi-

tively refus'd it, and rose up, *for I was sitting on the Ground* in Order to go to the Boat; one or two of the Men began to importune me to go, and when I refus'd positively, began to grumble, and say they were not under my Command, and they would go: Come *Jack*, says one of the Men, will go with me? I'll go for one, *Jack* said he would, and another followed, and then another; and in a Word, they all left me but one, who I persuaded to stay, and a Boy left in the Boat; so the Supra-Cargo and I, with the third Man, went back to the Boat, where we told them we would stay for them, and take Care to take in as many of them as should be left; for I told them it was a mad Thing they were going about, and supposed most of them would run the Fate of *Thom. Jeffry*.

They told me, like Seamen, they'd warrant it they would come off again, and they would take care, &c. So away they went; I entreated 'em to consider the Ship and Voyage; that their Lives were not their own, and that they were entrusted with the Voyage in some Measure, that if they miscarry'd, the Ship might be lost for want of their Help, and that they could not answer it to God or Man. I said a great deal more to 'em on that Head, but I might as well have talk'd to the Main-Mast of the Ship, they were mad upon their Journey, only they gave me good Words, and begg'd I would not be angry; That they would be very cautious, and they did not doubt but they would be back again in about an Hour at farthest; for the *Indian* Town, they said, was not above half a Mile off, tho' they found it above two Miles before they got to it.

Well, they all went away, as above; and tho' the Attempt was desperate, and such, as none but mad Men would have gone about, yet to give 'em their due, they

went about it warily as boldly: They were gallantly armed, that's true; for they had every Man a Fuzee or Musket, a Bayonet, every Man a Pistol; some of them had broad Cutlasses, some of them Hangers, and the Boatswain and Two more, had Pole-Axes: Besides all which, they had among them thirteen Hand-Grenadoes. Bolder Fellows, and better provided, never went about any wicked Work in the World.

When they went out, their chief Design was Plunder, and they were in mighty hopes of finding Gold there; but a Circumstance which none of them were aware of, set them on fire with Revenge, and made Devils of them all. When they came to the few *Indian* Houses which they thought had been the Town, which was not above half a Mile off; they were under a great Disappointment; for there were not above 12 or 13 Houses; and where the Town was, or how big, they knew not: They consulted therefore what to do, and were some time before they could resolve: for if they fell upon these, they must cut all their Throats, and it was ten to one but some of them might escape, it being in the Night, tho' the Moon was up; and if one escaped, he would run away, and raise all the Town, so they should have a whole Army upon them: Again, on the other hand, if they went away, and left those untouch'd (for the People were all asleep) they could not tell which Way to look for the Town.

However, the last was the best Advice; so they resolv'd to leave them, and look for the Town as well as they could. They went on a little Way, and found a Cow tied to a Tree; this they presently concluded, would be a good Guide to them; for they said, the Cow certainly belonged to the Town before them, or the Town behind them; and if they untied her, they should see which way she went; if

she went back, they had nothing to say to her; but if she went forward, they had nothing to do but to follow her: So they cut the Cord, which was made of twisted Flags, and the Cow went on before them; in a Word, the Cow led them directly to the Town, which as they report, consisted of above 200 Houses, or Huts; and in some of these, they found several Families living together.

Here they found all in Silence, as profoundly secure, as Sleep, and a Country that had never seen an Enemy of that Kind could make them; and first, they call'd another Council, to consider what they had to do; and in a Word, they resolv'd to divide themselves into three Bodies, and to set three Houses on Fire in three Parts of the Town; and as the Men came out, to seize them and bind them; if any resisted, they need not be ask'd what to do then, and so to search the rest of the Houses for Plunder; but they resolv'd to march silently first, thro' the Town, and see what Dimensions it was of, and if they might venture upon it or no.

They did so, and desperately resolv'd that they would venture upon them; but while they were animating one another to the Work, three of them that were a little before the rest, call'd out aloud to them, and told them they had found *Thom. Jeffry*; they all run up to the Place, and so it was indeed; for there they found the poor Fellow hang'd up naked by one Arm, and his Throat cut; there was an *Indian* House just by the Tree, where they found sixteen or seventeen of the principal *Indians* who had been concern'd in the Fray with us before; and two or three of them wounded with our Shot; and our Men found they were awake, and talking one to another in that House, but knew not their Number.

The Sight of their poor mangled Comrade so enrag'd

'em, as before, that they swore to one another they would be reveng'd, and that not an *Indian* who came into their Hands should have Quarter, and to Work they went immediately; and yet not so madly as by the Rage and Fury they were in might be expected. Their first Care was to get something that would soon take Fire; but after a little search, they found that would be to no purpose; but most of the Houses were low, and thatch'd with Flags or Rushes, of which the Country is full; so they presently made some wild Fire, as we call it, by wetting a little Powder in the Palms of their hands, and in a quarter of an Hour they set the Town on Fire in four or five Places; and particularly that House where the *Indians* were not gone to Bed. As soon as the Fire began to blaze, the poor frightened Creatures began to rush out to save their Lives; but met with their Fate in the Attempt, and especially at the Door, where they drove 'em back, the Boatswain himself killing one or two with his Pole-Ax; The House being large, and many in it, he did not care to go in, but call'd for a Hand-Grenado, and threw it among 'em, which at first frightened 'em; but when it burst, made such Havock among 'em, that they cried out in a hideous manner.

In short, most of the *Indians* who were in the open Part of the House, were killed or hurt with the Grenado, except two or three more who press'd to the Door, which the Boatswain and two more kept with their Bayonets in the Muzzles of their Pieces, and dispatch'd all who came that Way. But there was another Apartment in the House where the Prince or King, or whatever he was, and several others were, and these they kept in till the House, which was by this time all of a light Flame, fell in upon them, and they were smother'd or burnt together.

All this while they fir'd not a Gun, because they would

not waken the People faster than they could master them; but the Fire began to waken them fast enough, and our Fellows were glad to keep a little together in Bodies; for the Fire grew so raging, all the Houses being made of light combustible Stuff, that they could hardly bear the Street between them, and their Business was to follow the Fire for the surer Execution: As fast as the Fire either forc'd the People out of those Houses which were burning, or frighted them out of others, our People were ready at their Doors to knock them on the Head, still calling and hallowing to one another to remember *Thom. Jeffrys*.

While this was doing, I must confess I was very uneasie, and especially when I saw the Flames of the Town, which, it being Night, seem'd to be just by me.

My Nephew, the Captain, who was rouz'd by his Men too, seeing such a Fire, was very uneasie, not knowing what the Matter was, or what Danger I was in; especially hearing the Guns too; for by this time they began to use their Fire-Arms; a thousand Thoughts oppress'd his Mind concerning me and the Supra-Cargo, what should become of us: And at last, tho' he could ill spare any more Men, yet not knowing what Exigence we might be in, he takes another Boat, and with 13 Men and himself, comes on Shore to me.

He was surpriz'd to see me and the Supra-Cargo in the Boat with no more than two Men; and tho' he was glad that we were well, yet he was in the same Impatience with us to know what was doing; for the Noise continu'd, and the Flame encreas'd: In short, it was next to an Impossibility for any Men in the World, to restrain their Curiosity, to know what had happen'd, or the Concern for the Safety of the Men: In a word, the Captain told me, he would go and help his Men, let what would come. I ar-

gu'd with him as I did before with the Men, the Safety of the Ship, the Danger of the Voyage, the Interest of the Owners and Merchants, &c. and told him, I would go and the two Men, and only see if we could at a Distance learn what was like to be the Event, and come back and tell him.

It was all one, to talk to my Nephew, as it was to talk to the rest before; he would go he said, and he only wish'd he had left but Ten Men in the Ship; for he could not think of having his Men lost for want of Help, he had rather lose the Ship, the Voyage, and his Life and all; and away he went.

In a Word, I was no more able to stay behind now, than I was to persuade them not to go; so in short, the Captain order'd two Men to row back the Pinnace, and fetch twelve Men more, leaving the Long Boat at an Anchor, and that when they came back, six Men should keep the two Boats, and six more come after us; so that he left only 16 Men in the Ship; for the whole Ship's Company consisted of 65 Men, whereof two were lost in the last Quarrel, which brought this Mischief on.

Being now on the March, you may be sure we felt little of the Ground we trode on; and being guided by the Fire, we kept no Path, but went directly to the Place of the Flame: If the Noise of the Guns was surprizing to us before, the Cries of the poor People were now of quite another nature, and fill'd us with Horror. I must confess, I never was at the sacking a City, or at the taking a Town by storm. I had heard of *Oliver Cromwell* taking *Drogheda* in *Ireland*, and killing Man, Woman and Child: And I had read of Count *Tilly*, sacking of the City of *Magdeburgh*, and cutting the Throats of 22000 of all Sexes: But I never had an Idea of the Thing itself before, nor is

it possible to describe it, or the Horror which was upon our Minds at hearing it.

However, we went on, and at length came to the Town, tho' there was no entering the Streets of it for the Fire. The first Object we met with, was the Ruins of a Hut or House, or rather the Ashes of it, for the House was consum'd; and just before it, plain now to be seen by the Light of the Fire, lay four Men and three Women kill'd; and as we thought, one or two more lay in the Heap among the Fire. In short there were such Instances of a Rage altogether barbarous, and of a Fury, something beyond what was human, that we thought it impossible our Men could be guilty of it, or if they were the Authors of it, we thought they ought to be every one of 'em put to the worst of Deaths. But this was not all, we saw the Fire encreas'd forward, and the Cry went on just as the Fire went on; so that we were in the utmost Confusion. We advanc'd a little Way farther, and behold, to our Astonishment, three Women naked, and crying a most dreadful Manner, come flying, as if they had indeed had Wings, and after them sixteen or seventeen Men, Natives, in the same Terror and Consternation, with three of our *English* Butchers, for I can call them no better, in their Rear, who, when they could not overtake them, fir'd in among them, and one that was kill'd by their Shot fell down in our Sight; when the rest saw us, believing us to be their Enemies, and that we would murder them as well as those that persued them, they set up a most dreadful Shriek, especially the Women; and two of them fell down as if already dead with the Fright.

My very Soul shrunk within me, and my Blood run chill in my Veins, when I saw this; and I believe, had the three *English* Sailors that pursu'd them come on, I had

made our Men kill them all: However we took some Ways to let the poor flying Creatures know, that we would not hurt them, and immediately they came up to us, and kneeling down, with their Hands lifted up, made piteous Lamentation to us to save them, which we let them know we would; whereupon they crept altogether in a Huddle close behind us, as for Protection. I left my Men drawn up together, and charg'd them to hurt no Body, but if possible to get at some of our People, and see what Devil it was possess'd them, and what they intended to do; and in a word, to command them off; assuring them, that if they stay'd till Day-light, they would have an hundred thousand Men about their Ears: I say, I left them, and went among those flying People, taking only two of our Men with me; and there was indeed a piteous Spectacle among them: Some of them had their Feet terribly burnt with trampling and running thro' the Fire, others their Hands burnt; one of the Women had fallen down in the Fire, and was very much burnt before she could get out again, and two or three of the Men had Cuts in their Backs and Thighs from our Men pursuing; and another was shot thro' the Body, and died while I was there.

I would fain have learned what the Occasion of all this was, but I could not understand one Word they said; tho' by Signs I perceived that some of them knew not what was the Occasion themselves. I was so terrified in my Thoughts at this outrageous Attempt, that I could not stay there; but went back to my own Men, and resolved to go into the Middle of the Town thro' the Fire, or whatever might be in the Way, and put an End to it, cost what it would: Accordingly, as soon as I came back to my Men, I told them my Resolution, and commanded them to fol-

low me, when in the very Moment came four of our Men, with the Boatswain at their Head, roving over the Heaps of Bodies they had killed, all cover'd with Blood and Dust, as if they wanted more People to massacre, when our Men hallow'd to them as loud as they could hallow, and with much ado one of them made them hear; so that they knew who we were, and came up to us.

As soon as the Boatswain saw us, he set up a Hallow like a Shout of Triumph, for having, as he thought, more Help come, and without bearing to hear me, Captain, says he, noble Captain, I am glad you are come; we have not half done yet, villainous Hell-hound Dogs, I'll kill as many of them as poor *Tom*. has Hairs upon his Head. We have sworn to spare none of them, we'll root out the very Nation of 'em from the Earth, and thus he run on, out of Breath too with Action, and would not give us leave to speak a Word.

At last, raising my Voice, that I might silence him a little, Barbarous Dog, said I, what are you doing? I won't have one Creature touch'd more, upon pain of Death. I charge you upon your Life, to stop your Hands, and stand still here, or you are a dead Man this Minute.

Why, Sir, says he, Do you know what you do, or what they have done? If you want a Reason for what we have done, come hither; and with that he shew'd me the poor Fellow hanging with his Throat cut.

I confess, I was urged then myself, and at another Time should have been forward enough; but I thought they had carried their Rage too far, and thought of *Jacob's* Words to his Sons *Simeon* and *Levi*; *Cursed be their Anger, for it was fierce; and their Wrath, for it was cruel*: But I had now a new Task upon my hands; for when the Men I car-

ried with me saw the Sight as I had done, I had as much to do to restrain them, as I should have had with the other; nay, my Nephew himself fell in with them, and told me in their hearing, that he was only concerned for fear of the Men being overpower'd; for as to the People, he thought not one of 'em ought to live; for they had all glutted themselves with the Murther of the poor Man, and that they ought to be used like Murtherers. Upon these Words, away run eight of my Men with the Boatswain and his Crew, to compleat their bloody Work; and I seeing it quite out of my Power to restrain them, came away pensive and sad; for I could not bear the Sight, much less the horrible Noise and Cries of the poor Wretches that fell into their Hands.

I got no Body to come back with me but the Supra-Cargo and two Men; and with these I walk'd back to the Boats. It was a very great Piece of Folly in me, I confess, to venture back, as it were alone; for as it began now to be almost Day, and the Alarm had run over the Country, there stood about 40 Men arm'd with Launces and Bows at the little Place where the 12 or 13 Houses stood mention'd before; but by Accident I miss'd the Place, and came directly to the Sea-side, and by the Time I got to the Sea-side it was broad Day; immediately I took the Pinnace, and went aboard, and sent her back to assist the Men in what might happen.

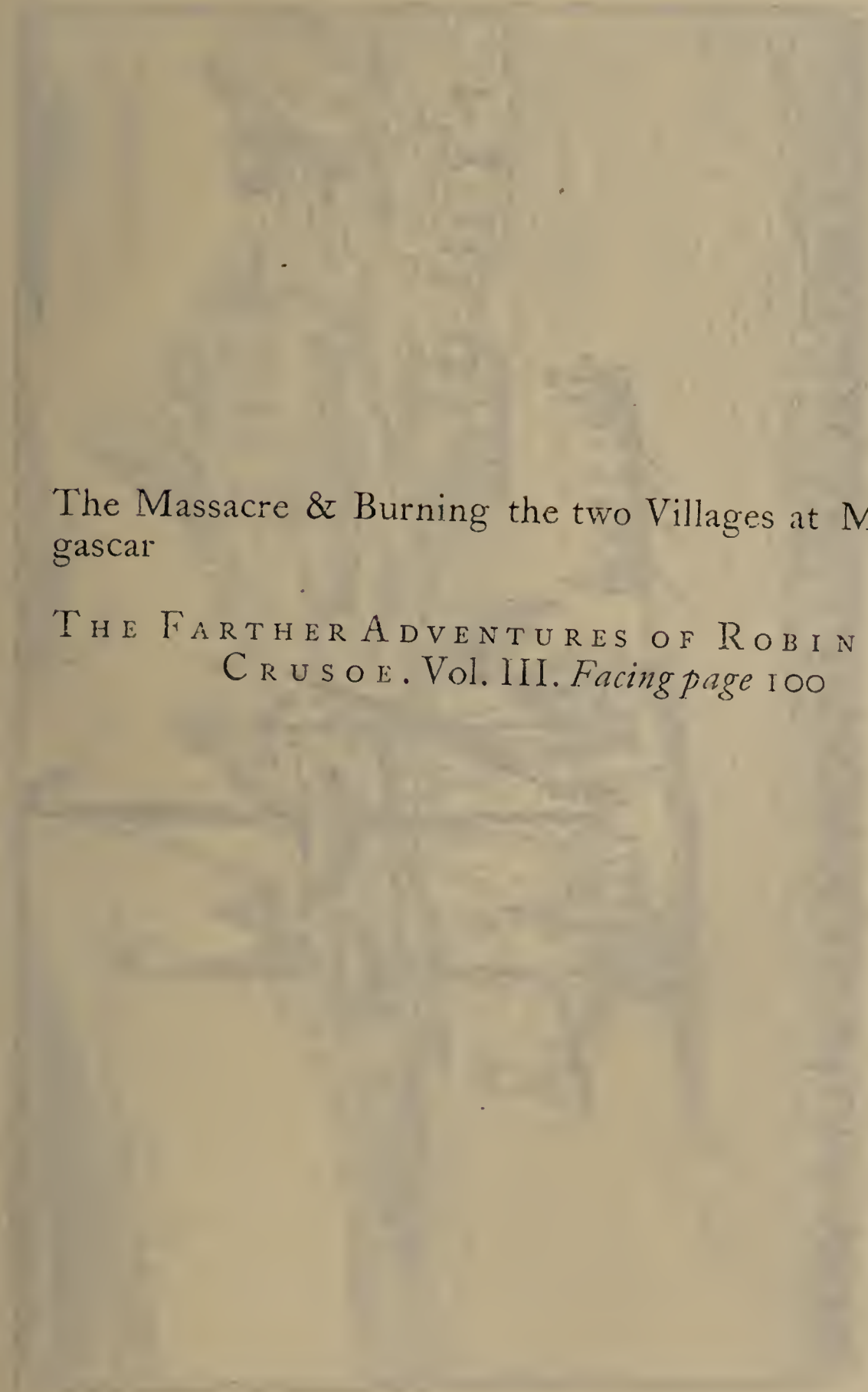
I observ'd about the Time that I came to the Boat-side, that the Fire was pretty well out, and the Noise abated; but in about half an Hour after I got on Board, I heard a Volley of our Mens Fire-Arms, and saw a great Smoak; this, as I understood afterwards, was our Men falling upon the Men, who as I said stood at the few Houses on the

Way, of whom they kill'd sixteen or seventeen, and set all those Houses on Fire, but did not meddle with the Women or Children.

By that Time the Men got to the Shore again with the Pinnace, our Men began to appear; they came dropping in, some and some, not in two Bodies, and in Form as they went, but all in Heaps, straggling here and there, in such a Manner, that a small Force of resolute Men might have cut them all off.

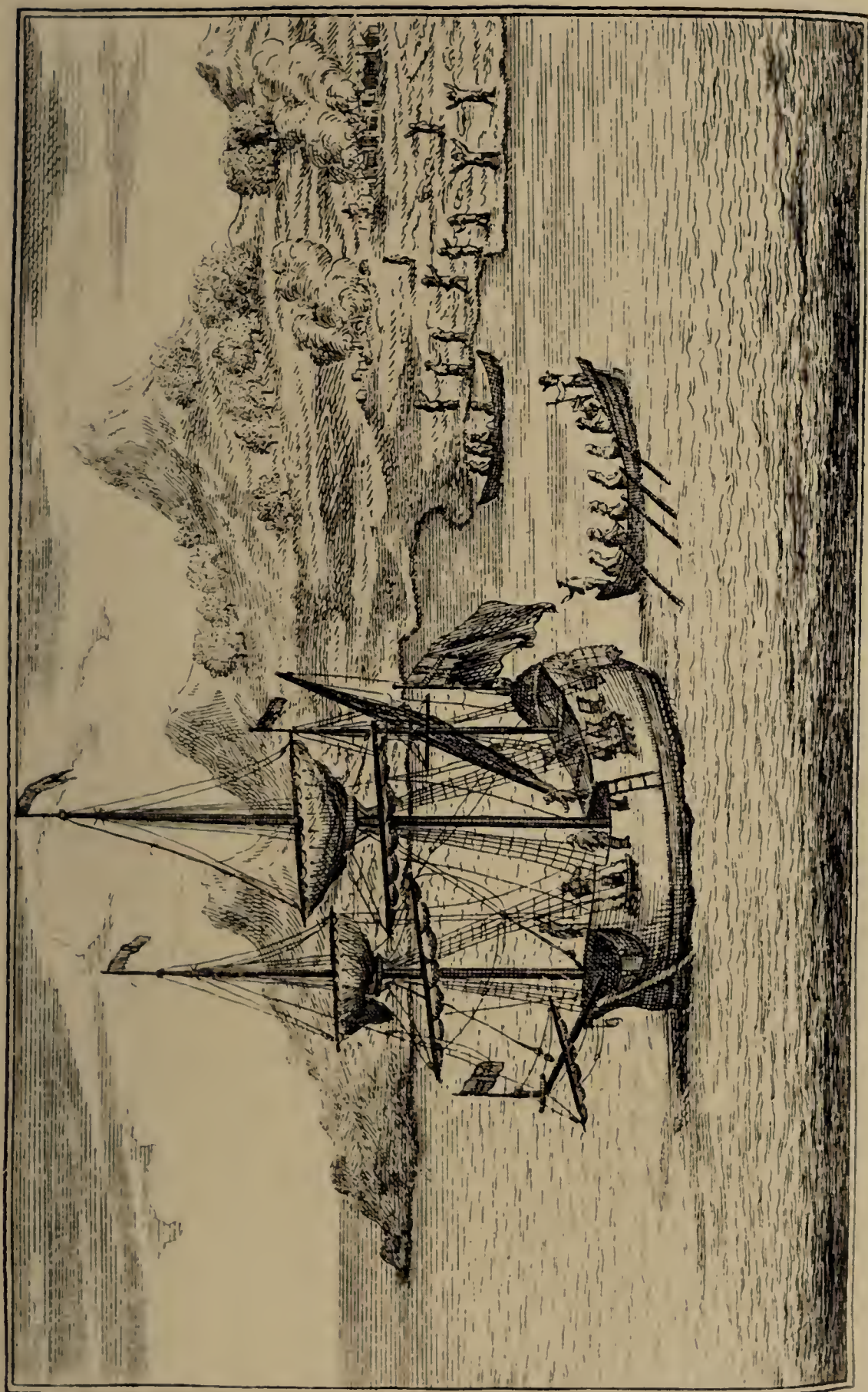
But the Dread of them was upon the whole Country; and the Men were amaz'd, and surpriz'd, and so frightened, that I believe a hundred of 'em would have fled at the Sight of but five of our Men. Nor in all this terrible Action was there a Man who made any considerable Defence, they were so surpriz'd between the Terror of the Fire, and the sudden Attack of our Men in the Dark, that they knew not which Way to turn themselves; for if they fled one Way, they were met by one Party; if back again, by another: So that they were everywhere knock'd down: Nor did any of our Men receive the least Hurt; except one who strain'd his Foot, and another had one of his Hands very much burnt.

I was very angry with my Nephew the Captain, and indeed with all the Men in my Mind, but with him in particular; as well for his acting so out of his Duty as Commander of the Ship, and having the Charge of the Voyage upon him, as in his prompting rather than cooling the Rage of his Men in so bloody and cruel an Enterprize. My Nephew answer'd me very respectfully; but told me, that when he saw the Body of the poor Seaman whom they had murther'd in such a cruel and barbarous manner, he was not Master of himself, neither could he govern his Passion. He own'd, he should not have done so, as he was



The Massacre & Burning the two Villages at Madagascar

THE FARTHER ADVENTURES OF ROBINSON
CRUSOE. Vol. III. *Facing page 100*



Commander of the Ship; but as he was a Man, and Nature mov'd him, he could not bear it. As for the rest of the Men, they were not subject to me at all, and they knew it well enough; so they took no notice of my Dislike.

The next Day we set sail, so we never heard any more of it: Our Men differ'd in the Account of the Number they kill'd: Some said one Thing, some another; but according to the best of their Accounts put altogether, they kill'd or destroy'd about 150 People, Men, Women, and Children, and left not a House standing in the Town.

As for the poor Fellow *Tho. Jeffrys*, as he was quite dead, for his Throat was so cut, that his Head was half off, it would do him no Service to bring him away, so they left him where they found him, only took him down from the Tree where he was hang'd by one Hand.

However just our Men thought this Action, I was against them in it; and I always, after that Time, told them, God would blast the Voyage; for I look'd upon all the Blood they shed that Night to be Murther in them: For tho' it is true, that they had kill'd *Tho. Jeffrys*, yet it was as true, that *Jeffrys* was the Aggressor, had broken the Truce, and had violated or debauch'd a young Woman of theirs who came down to them innocently, and on the Faith of their publick Capitulation.

The Boatswain defended this Quarrel when we were afterwards on board: He said, It is true that we seem'd to break the Truce, but really had not, and that the War was begun the Night before by the Natives themselves, who had shot at us, and kill'd one of our Men without any just Provocation; so that as we were in a Capacity to fight them now, we might also be in a Capacity to do our selves Justice upon them in an extraordinary Manner, that tho' the poor Man had taken a little Liberty with a Wench, he

ought not to have been murther'd, and that in such a villainous Manner: and that they did nothing but what was just, and what the Laws of God allow'd to be done to Murtherers.

One would think this should have been enough to have warn'd us against going on Shore among Heathens and Barbarians: But it is impossible to make Mankind wise, but at their own Expence and their Experience seems to be always of most Use to them, when it is dearest bought.

We were now bound to the Gulph of *Persia*, and from thence to the Coast of *Coremandel*, only to touch at *Sur-rat*: But the chief of the Supra-Cargo's Design lay at the Bay of *Bengale*, where if he miss'd of his Business outward bound, he was to go up to *China*, and return to the Coast as he came Home.

The first Disaster that befel us, was in the Gulph of *Persia*, where five of our Men venturing on Shore on the *Arabian* Side of the Gulph, were surrounded by the *Arabs*, and either all kill'd or carry'd away into Slavery; the rest of the Boat's Crew were not able to rescue them, and had but just Time to get off their Boat. I began to upbraid them with the just Retribution of Heaven in this Case: But the Boatswain very warmly told me, he thought I went farther in my Censures than I could shew any Warrant for in Scripture, and referr'd to the 13 St *Luke*, Verse 4th. where our Saviour intimates, that those Men, on whom the Tower of *Siloam* fell, were not Sinners above all the *Galileans*: But that which indeed put me to Silence in the Case, was, That not one of these five Men, who were now lost, were of the Number of those who went on Shore to the Massacre of *Madagascar*; (so I always call'd it, tho' our Men could not bear the Word Massacre with any

Patience:) And indeed, this last Circumstance, as I have said, put me to Silence for the present.

But my frequent preaching to them on this Subject had worse Consequences than I expected; and the Boatswain, who had been the Head of the Attempt, came up boldly to me one Time, and told me, he found, that I continually brought that Affair upon the Stage, that I made unjust Reflections upon it, and had used the Men very ill on that Account, and himself in particular; that as I was but a Passenger, and had no Command in the Ship, or Concern in the Voyage, they were not oblig'd to bear it; that they did not know, but I might have some ill Design in my Head, and perhaps to call them to Account for it, when they came to *England*; and that therefore, unless I would resolve to have done with it; and also, not to concern my self any farther with him, or any of his Affairs, he would leave the Ship; for he did not think it was safe to sail with me among them.

I heard him patiently enough 'till he had done, and then told him, that I did confess I had all along oppos'd the *Massacre of Madagascar*, for such I would always call it; and that I had on all Occasions spoken my Mind freely about it, tho' not more upon him than any of the rest: That as to my having no Command in the Ship, that was true; nor did I exercise any Authority, only took my Liberty of speaking my Mind in Things which publickly concern'd us all; and what Concern I had in the Voyage was none of his Business; that I was a considerable Owner of the Ship; and in that Claim I conceived I had a Right to speak even farther than I had yet done, and would not be accountable to him or any one else, and begun to be a little warm with him: He made but little Reply to me at that Time, and I thought that Affair had been over. We

were at this Time in the Road at *Bengale*, and being willing to see the Place, I went on Shore with the Supra-Cargo in the Ship's Boat, to divert myself, and towards Evening was preparing to go on Board, when one of the Men came to me, and told me, he would not have me trouble my self to come down to the Boat, for they had Orders not to carry me on Board any more. Any one may guess what a Surprise I was in at so insolent a Message; and I ask'd the Man, who bad him deliver that Errand to me? He told me, the Cockswain. I said no more to the Fellow, but bad him let them know he had deliver'd his Message, and that I had given him no Answer to it.

I immediately went and found out the Supra-Cargo, and told him the Story, adding what I presently foresaw, (*viz.*) That there would certainly be a Mutiny in the Ship, and entreated him to go immediately on Board the Ship in an *Indian* Boat, and acquaint the Captain of it: But I might ha' spar'd this Intelligence; for before I had spoken to him on Shore, the Matter was effected on Board. The Boatswain, the Gunner, the Carpenter; and in a Word, all the Inferiour Officers, as soon as I was gone off in the Boat, came up to the Quarter-Deck, and desir'd to speak with the Captain, and there the Boatswain making a long Harangue for the Fellow talk'd very well, and repeating all he had said to me, told the Captain in few Words, That as I was now gone peaceably on Shore, they were loth to use any Violence with me; which, if I had not gone on Shore, they would otherwise have done, to oblige me to have gone: They therefore thought fit to tell him, That as they shipp'd themselves to serve in the Ship under his Command, they would perform it well and faithfully: But if I would not quit the Ship, or the Captain oblige me to quit it, they would all leave the Ship, and sail no

farther with him; and at that Word, A L L, he turn'd his Face about towards the Main-mast, which was it seems the Signal agreed on between them; at which, all the Seamen being got together, they cry'd out, *One* and A L L, *One* and A L L.

My Nephew, the Captain, was a Man of Spirit, and of great Presence of Mind; and tho' he was surpriz'd, you may be sure, at the Thing, yet he told them calmly, that he would consider of the Thing, but that he could do nothing in it 'till he had spoken to me about it. He us'd some Arguments with them, to shew them the Unreasonableness and Injustice of the Thing: But it was all in vain, they swore and shook Hands round before his Face, that they would go all on Shore, unless he would engage to them, not to suffer me to come any more on Board the Ship.

This was a hard Article upon him, who knew his Obligation to me, and did not know how I might take it; so he began to talk cavalierly to them, told them that I was a very considerable Owner of the Ship, and that in Justice he could not put me out of my own House; that this was next Door to serving me, as the famous Pirate *Kid* had done, who made the Mutiny in a Ship, set the Captain on Shore in an uninhabited Island, and run away with the Ship; that let them go into what Ship they would, if ever they came to *England* again, it would cost them dear; that the Ship was mine, and that he could not put me out of it; and that he would rather lose the Ship and the Voyage too, than disoblige me so much; so they might do as they pleas'd: However, he would go on Shore, and talk with me on Shore, and invited the Boatswain to go with me [him] and perhaps they might accommodate the Matter with me.

But they all rejected the Proposal, and said, they would

have nothing to do with me any more, neither on Board, or on Shore; and if I came on Board, they would all go on Shore. Well, said the Captain, if you are all of this Mind, let me go on Shore and talk with him; so away he came to me with this Account, a little after the Message had been brought to me from the Cockswain.

I was very glad to see my Nephew, I must confess; for I was not without Apprehensions, that they would confine him by Violence, set sail, and run away with the Ship, and then I had been stripp'd naked in a remote Country, and nothing to help myself: In short, I had been in a worse Case, than when I was all alone in the Island.

But they had not come that length, it seems, to my great satisfaction; and when my Nephew told me what they had said to him, and how they had sworn, and shook Hands, that they would *one* and *all* leave the Ship, if I was suffer'd to come on Board, I told him, he should not be concern'd at it at all, for I would stay on Shore. I only desir'd he would take Care and send me all my necessary Things on Shore, and leave me a sufficient Sum of Money, and I would find my Way to *England*, as well as I could.

This was a heavy Piece of News to my Nephew; but there was no Way to help it, but to comply with it: So, in short, he went on Board the Ship again, and satisfy'd the Men, that his Uncle had yielded to their Importunity, and had sent for his Goods from on Board the Ship; so that Matter was over in a very few Hours, the Men return'd to their Duty, and I began to consider what Course I should steer.

I was now alone in the remotest Part of the World, *as I think I may call it*; for I was near three thousand Leagues by Sea farther off from *England*, than I was at my Island; only it is true, I might travel here by Land over the Great

Mogul's Country to *Surratte*, might go from thence to *Basora* by Sea, up the Gulph of *Persia*, and from thence might take the Way of the Caravans over the Desert of *Arabia* to *Aleppo* and *Scanderoon*; from thence by Sea again to *Italy*, and so over Land into *France*, and this put together might be, at least, a full Diameter of the Globe; but if it were to be measur'd, I suppose it would appear to be a great deal more.

I had another Way before me, which was to wait for some *English* Ships, which were coming to *Bengale* from *Achin* on the Island of *Sumatra*, and get Passage on Board them for *England*: But as I came hither without any Concern with the *English East-India* Company, so it would be difficult to go from hence without their Licence, unless with great Favour of the Captains of the Ships, or of the Company's Factors, and to both, I was an utter Stranger.

Here I had the particular Pleasure, speaking by Contraries, to see the Ship set sail without me, a Treatment I think a Man in my Circumstances scarce ever met with, except from Pirates running away with a Ship, and setting those that would not agree with their Villany, on Shore: indeed this was next Door to it, both Ways; however, my Nephew left me two Servants, or rather one Companion, and one Servant, the first was Clerk to the Purser, who he engag'd to go with me, and the other was his own Servant; I took me also a good Lodging in the House of an *English* Woman, where several Merchants lodg'd; some *French*, two *Italians*, or rather *Jews*, and one *English* Man: Here I was handsomely enough entertain'd; and that I might not be said to run rashly upon any Thing, I stay'd here above nine Months, considering what Course to take, and how to manage myself; I had some *English* Goods with me of Value, and a considerable Sum of Money, my

Nephew furnishing me with a thousand Pieces of Eight, and a Letter of Credit for more, if I had Occasion, that I might not be straiten'd whatever might happen.

I quickly dispos'd of my Goods, and to Advantage too; and, as I originally intended, I bought here some very good Diamonds, which, of all other Things, was the most proper for me in my present Circumstances, because I might always carry my whole Estate about me.

After a long Stay here, and many Proposals made for my Return to *England*, but none falling out to my Mind, the *English* Merchant who lodged with me, and with whom I had contracted an intimate Acquaintance, came to me one Morning: Country-man, says he, I have a Project to communicate to you, which, as it suits with my Thoughts, may for ought I know, suit with your's also, when you shall have thoroughly consider'd it.

Here we are posted, *says he*, you by Accident, and I by my own Choice, in a Part of the World very remote from our own Country; but it is in a Country, where, by us who understand Trade and Business, a great deal of Money is to be got: If you will put a thousand Pound to my thousand Pound, we will hire a Ship here, the first we can get to our Minds; you shall be Captain, I'll be Merchant, and we will go a trading Voyage to *China*; for what should we stand still for? The whole World is in Motion, rouling round and round; all the Creatures of God, heavenly Bodies and earthly are busy and diligent, Why should we be idle? There are no Drones in the World but Men, Why should we be of that Number?

I lik'd his Proposal very well, and the more, because it seem'd to be express'd with so much good Will, and in so friendly a Manner: I will not say, but that I might by my loose and unhing'd Circumstances be the fitter to em-

brace a Proposal for Trade, or indeed for any Thing else; whereas, otherwise, Trade was none of my Element: However, I might perhaps say with some Truth, that if Trade was not my Element, Rambling was, and no Proposal for seeing any Part of the World which I had never seen before, could possibly come amiss to me.

It was however, some Time before we could get a Ship to our Minds; and when we had got a Vessel, it was not easy to get *English* Sailors; that is to say, so many as were necessary to govern the Voyage, and manage the Sailors which we should pick up there: After some Time we got a Mate, a Boatswain, and a Gunner *English*; a *Dutch* Carpenter, and three *Portuguese* Fore-mast Men; with these we found, we could do well enough, having *Indian* Seamen, such as they are, to make up.

There are so many Travellers, who have wrote the History of their Voyages and Travels this Way, that it would be very little Diversion to any Body, to give a long Account of the Places we went to, and the People who inhabit there; those Things I leave to others, and refer the Reader to those Journals and Travels of *English* Men, of which, many I find are publish'd, and more promis'd every Day; 'tis enough to me to tell you, That I made this Voyage to *Achin*, in the Island of *Sumatra*, and from thence to *Siam*, where we exchange'd some of our Wares for Opium, and some Arrack, the first, a Commodity which bears a great Price among the *Chinese*, and which at that Time, was very much wanted there; in a Word, we went up to *Suskan*, made a very great Voyage; was eight Months out, and return'd to *Bengale*, and I was very well satisfy'd with my Adventure: I observe that our People in *England*, often admire how the Officers which the Company send into *India*, and the Merchants which generally stay there, get such

very great Estates as they do, and sometimes come Home worth 60, to 70 [and] 100 thousand Pound at a Time.

But it is no Wonder, or at least we shall see so much farther into it, when we consider the innumerable Ports and Places where they have a free Commerce; that it will then be no Wonder; and much less will it be so, when we consider, that at all those Places and Ports where the *English* Ships come, there is so much, and such constant Demand for the Growth of all other Countries, that there is a certain Vent for the Returns, as well as a Market abroad, for the Goods carried out.

In short, we made a very good Voyage, and I got so much Money by the first Adventure, and such an Insight into the Method of getting more, that had I been twenty Year younger, I should have been tempted to have staid here and sought no farther, for making my Fortune; but what was all this, to a Man on the wrong Side of three-score, that was rich enough, and came abroad, more in Obedience to a restless Desire of seeing the World, than a covetous Desire of getting in it; and indeed I think, 'tis with great Justice, that I now call it a restless Desire for it was so; when I was at Home, I was restless to go abroad; and now I was abroad, I was restless to be at Home: I say, what was this Gain to me? I was rich enough, nor had I any uneasie Desires about getting more Money and therefore, the Profit of the Voyage to me, were Things of no great Force, for the prompting me forward to farther Undertakings; and I thought that by this Voyage, I had made no Progress at all, because I was come back as I might call it, to the Place from whence I came as to a Home; whereas, my Eye, which like that, which *Solomon* speaks of, *was never satisfied with Seeing*, was still more desirous of Wand'ring and Seeing; I was come into a Part

of the World, which I was never in before; and that Part in particular, which I had heard much of; and was resolv'd to see as much of as I could, and then I thought, I might say, I had seen all the World, that was worth seeing.

But my Fellow Traveller and I, had different Notions; I do not name this, to insist upon my own, for I acknowledge his were the most just and the most suited to the end of a Merchant's Life; who, when he is abroad upon Adventures, 'tis his Wisdom to stick to that as the best Thing for him, which he is like to get the most Money by: My new Friend kept himself to the Nature of the Thing, and would have been content to have gone like a Carrier's Horse, always to the same Inn, backward and forward, provided he could, as he call'd it, *find his Account in it*; on the other Hand, mine was the Notion of a mad rambling Boy, that never cares to see a Thing twice over.

But this was not all; I had a Kind of Impatience upon me to be nearer Home, and yet, the most unsettled Resolution imaginable which Way to go; in the Interval of these Consultations, my Friend, who was always upon the Search for Business, propos'd another Voyage to me among the Spice Islands, and to bring Home a Loading of Cloves from the *Manillas*, or thereabouts; Places where indeed the *Dutch* do trade, but Islands, belonging partly to the *Spaniards*; tho' we went not so far, but to some other, where they have not the whole Power as they have at *Batavia*, *Ceylon*, &c. we were not long in preparing for this Voyage; the chief Difficulty was in bringing me to come into it; however, at last nothing else offering, and finding that really stirring about and trading, the Profit being so great, and as I may say certain, had more Pleasure in it, and more Satisfaction to the Mind than sitting still, which to me especially, was the unhappiest Part of Life: I re-

solv'd on this Voyage too, which we made very successfully, touching at *Borneo*, and several Islands, whose Names I do not remember, and came Home in about five Months; we sold our Spice, which was chiefly Cloves, and some Nutmegs, to the *Persian* Merchants, who carried them away for the Gulph; and making near five of one, we really got a great deal of Money.

My Friend, when we made up this Account smil'd at me; well now, said he, with a Sort of agreeable insulting my indolent Temper; is not this better than walking about here, like a Man *of nothing to do*, and spending our Time in staring at the Nonsense and Ignorance of the Pagans? Why truly, says I, my Friend, I think it is; and I begin to be a Convert to the Principles of Merchandizing; but I must tell you, said I, by the Way, you do not know what I am a doing; for if once I conquer, my backwardness, and embark heartily; as old as I am, I shall harrass you up and down the World, till I tire you; for I shall pursue it so eagerly, I shall never let you lye still.

But to be short with my Speculations, a little while after this, there came in a *Dutch* Ship from *Batavia*; she was a Coaster, not an *European* Trader, and of about two hundred Ton Burthen: The Men, as they pretended having been so sickly, that the Captain had not Men enough to go to Sea with; he lay by at *Bengal*, and having it seems got Money enough, or being willing for other Reasons, to go for *Europe*, he gave publick Notice, that he would sell his Ship: This came to my Ears before my new Partner heard of it; and I had a great Mind to buy it, so I goes Home to him, and told him of it; he considered a while, for he was no rash Man neither; but musing some Time, he reply'd, she is a little too big; but however, we will have her; accordingly we bought the Ship, and agreeing

with the Master, we paid for her, and took Possession; when we had done so, we resolved to entertain the Men if we could, to join them with those we had, for the pursuing our Business; but on a sudden, they having receiv'd not their Wages, but their Share of the Money, not one of them was to be found; we enquir'd much about them, and at length were told, that they were all gone together by Land to *Agra*, the great City of the *Mogul's* Residence; and from thence were to travel to *Suratte*, and so by Sea, to the Gulph of *Persia*.

Nothing had so heartily troubled me a good while; as that I miss'd the Opportunity of going with them; for such a Ramble I thought, and in such Company, as would both have guarded me and diverted me, would have suited mightily with my great Design; and I should both have seen the World, and gone homewards too; but I was much better satisfied a few Days after, when I came to know what sort of Fellows they were; for in short, their History was, that this Man they call'd Captain was the Gunner only, not the Commander; that they had been a trading Voyage, in which, they were attack'd on Shore, by some of the *Mallayans*, who had kill'd the Captain, and three of his Men; and that after the Captain was kill'd, these Men Eleven in Number, had resolv'd to run away with the Ship, which they did; and brought her in at the Bay of *Bengale*, leaving the Mate and five Men more on Shore, of whom, we shall hear farther.

Well, let them come by the Ship how they would, we came honestly by her, *as we thought*, tho' we did not I confess, examine into Things so exactly as we ought, for we never enquir'd any Thing of the Seamen; who, if we had examin'd, would certainly have falter'd in their Account, contradicted one another, and perhaps contradicted them-

selves, or one how or other, we should have seen Reason to have suspected them; but the Man shew'd us a Bill of Sale for the Ship, to one *Emanuel Clostershoven*, or some such Name; for I suppose it was all a Forgery, and call'd himself by that Name, and we could not contradict him; and being withal, a little too unwary, or at least, having no Suspicion of the Thing, we went thro' with our Bargain.

We pick'd up some more *English* Seamen here after this, and some *Dutch*; and now we resolved for a second Voyage, to the South East for Cloves, &c. that is to say, among the *Philippine* and *Mollucco* Isles; and in short, not to fill this Part of my Story with Trifles, when what is yet to come, is so remarkable; I spent from first to last six Years in this Country, trading from Port to Port, backward and forward, and with very good Success; and was now the last Year with my new Partner, going in the Ship above-mention'd, on a Voyage to *China*; but designing first to *Siam*, to buy Rice.

In this Voyage, being by contrary Winds oblig'd to beat up and down a great while in the Straits of *Mallacca*, and among the Islands; we were no sooner got clear of those difficult Seas, but we found our Ship had sprung a Leak, and we were not able by all our Industry to find it out where it was: This forc'd us to make for some Port, and my Partner who knew the Country better than I did, directed the Captain to put into the River of *Cambodia*, for I had made the English Mate, one Mr. Thomson, Captain, not being willing to take the Charge of the Ship upon myself; This River lies on the North Side of the great Bay or Gulph, which goes up to *Siam*.

While we were here, and going often on Shore for Refreshment, there comes to me one Day an *English* Man,

and he was it seems a Gunner's Mate, on board an *English East-India* Ship, which rode in the same River, up at, or near the City of *Cambodia*; what brought him hither we know not; but he comes up to me, and speaking *English*: Sir, says he, you are a Stranger to me, and I to you; but I have something to tell you, that very nearly concerns you.

I look'd steadily at him a good while, and thought at first I had known him, but I did not; if it very nearly concerns me, said I, and not your self, what moves you to tell it me? I am moved says he, by the eminent Danger you are in, and for ought I see, you have no Knowledge of it; I know no Danger I am in, said I, but that my Ship is leaky, and I cannot find it out; but I purpose to lay her a-Ground to Morrow, to see if I can find it; but Sir, says he, leaky, or not leaky, find it, or not find it, you will be wiser than to lay your Ship on Shore to Morrow, when you hear what I have to say to you; do you know Sir, said he, the Town of *Cambodia*, lyes about fifteen Leagues up this River? and there are two large *English* Ships about five Leagues on this Side, and three *Dutch*; well said I, and what is that to me? Why Sir, said he, is it for a Man that is upon such Adventures as you are upon, to come into a Port, and not examine first what Ships there are there, and whether he is able to deal with them? I suppose you don't think you are a Match for them: I was amused very much at his Discourse, but not amaz'd at it, for I could not conceive what he meant; and I turn'd short upon him and said, Sir, I wish you would explain your self; I cannot imagine what Reason I have to be afraid of any Company Ships, or *Dutch* Ships; I am no Interloper, what can they have to say to me?

He look'd like a Man half angry, half pleas'd, and pausing a while, but smiling; well Sir, says he, if you think

your self secure, you must take your Chance; I am sorry your Fate should blind you against good Advice; but assure your self, if you do not put to Sea immediately, you will the very next Tide be attack'd by five Long-Boats full of Men, and perhaps if you are taken, you'll be hang'd for a Pirate, and the Particulars be examin'd afterwards: I thought Sir, added he, I should have met with a better Reception than this, for doing you a Piece of Service of such Importance: I can never be ungrateful, *said I*, for any Service, or to any Man that offers me any Kindness, but it is past my Comprehension *said I*, what they should have such a Design upon me for, however, *since you say*, there is no Time to be lost, and that there is some villainous Design in Hand against me; I'll go on board this Minute, and put to Sea immediately, If my Men can stop the leak, or if we can swim without stopping it? But, Sir, *said I*, shall I go away ignorant of the Reason of all this? Can you give me no farther Light into it?

I can tell you but Part of the Story, Sir, says he, but I have a *Dutch* Seaman here with me, and I believe I could persuade him to tell you the rest; but there is scarce time for it. But the short of the Story is this, the first Part of which, I suppose, you know well enough, (*viz.*) that you was with this Ship at *Sumatra*, that there your Captain was murder'd by the *Mallayans*, with three of his Men, and that you or some of those who were on board with you, ran away with the Ship, and are since turn'd *PIRATES*; this is the Sum of the Story, and you will be all seiz'd as Pirates I can assure you, and executed, with very little Ceremony; for you know, Merchants Ships shew but little Law to *Pirates*, if they get them into their Power.

Now you speak plain *English*, *said I*, and I thank you; and tho' I know nothing, that we have done, like what you

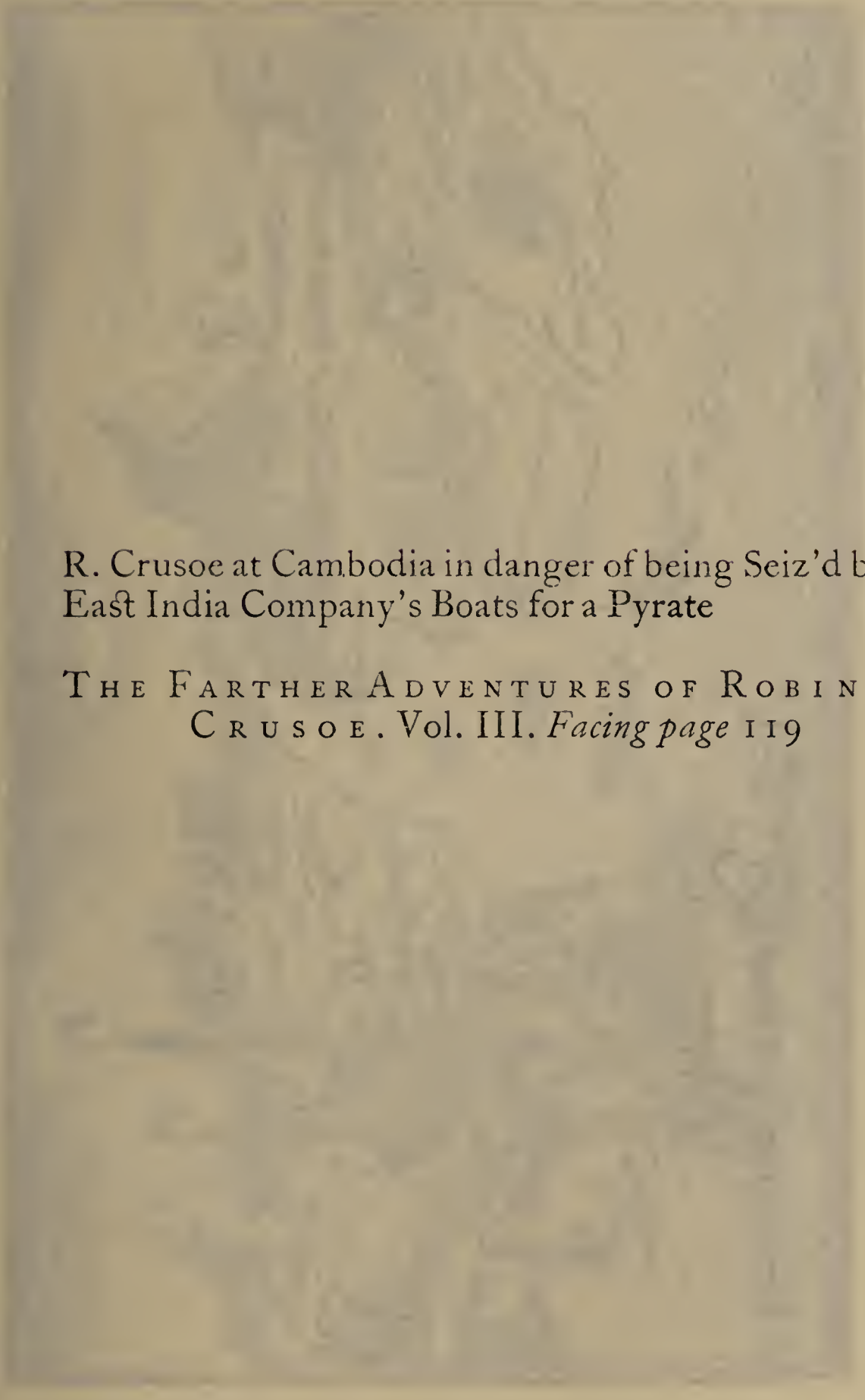
talk of, but am sure we came honestly and fairly by the Ship, yet seeing such Work is a doing as you say, and that you seem to mean honestly, I'll be upon my guard; nay, Sir, says he, do not talk of being upon your guard; the best Defence, is to be out of the Danger, if you have any Regard to your Life, and the Life of all your Men; put out to Sea without fail at High Water, and as you have a whole Tide before you, you will be gone too far out before they can come down, for they came away at High Water; and as they have twenty Miles to come, you get near two Hours of them, by the Difference of the Tide, not reckoning the Length of the Way; besides, as they are only Boats, and not Ships, they will not venture to follow you far out to Sea, especially if it blows.

Well, *says I*, you have been very kind in this, what shall I do for you, to make you amends? Sir, says he, you may not be so willing to make me any amends, because you may not be convinc'd of the Truth of it: I'll make an offer to you; I have nineteen Months Pay due to me, on board the Ship ————— which I came out of *England* in, and the *Dutch* Man that is with me, has seven Months Pay due to him; if you will make good our Pay to us, we will go along with you; if you find nothing more in it, we will desire no more; but if we do convince you, that we have sav'd your Lives, and the Ship, and the Lives of all the Men in her, we will leave the rest to you.

I consented to this readily, and went immediately on board, and the two Men with me; as soon as I came to the Ship Side, my Partner who was on board, came out on the Quarter-Deck, and call'd to me with a great deal of Joy, *O ho! O oh! we have stopp'd the leak! we have stopp'd the leak!* Say you so, *said I*, thank God; but weigh the Anchor then immediately; weigh! *Says he*: What do you mean

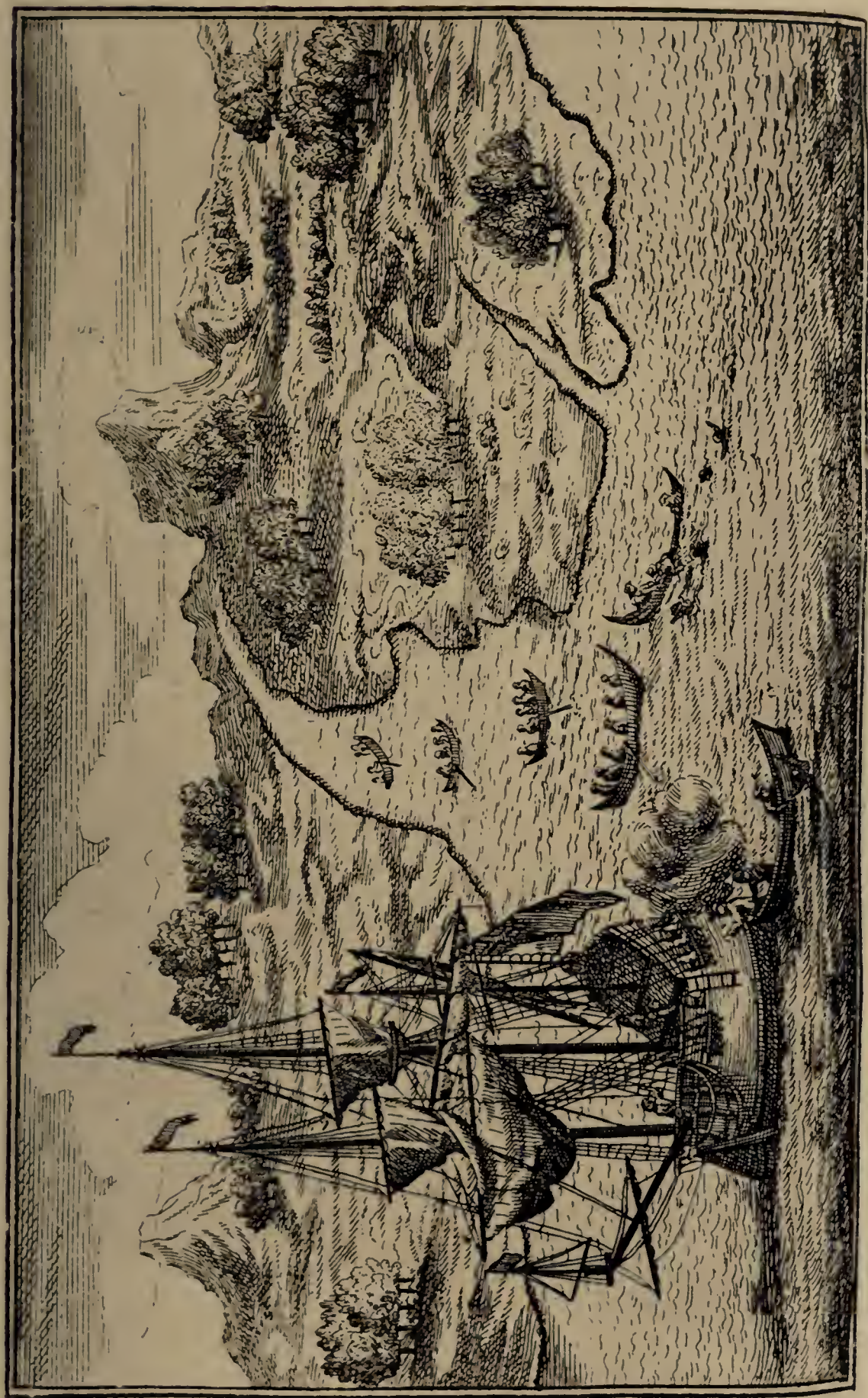
by that? What is the Matter, *says he?* Ask no Questions, *says I*, but all Hands to work, and *weigh*, without losing a Minute; he was surpriz'd, but however, he call'd the Captain, and he immediately order'd the Anchor to be got up; and tho' the Tide was not quite done, yet a little Land Breeze blowing, we stood out to Sea; then I call'd him into the Cabin and told him the Story at large, and we call'd in the Men, and they told us the rest of it; but as it took us up a great deal of Time, so before we had done, a Seaman comes to the Cabin Door, and calls out to us, that the Captain bad him tell us, we were chas'd; chas'd, *says I*, by who, and by what? By five Sloops or Boats, *says the Fellow*, full of Men; very well, *said I*, then it is apparent there is something in it; in the next Place I order'd all our Men to be call'd up, and told them, that there was a Design to seize the Ship, and to take us for Pirates, and ask'd them, if they would stand by us, and by one another; the Men answer'd chearfully, that one and all, they would live and die with us: Then I asked the Captain, what Way he thought best for us to manage a Fight with them; for resist them I was resolved we would, and that, to the last Drop; he said readily, That the Way was to keep them off with our great Shot, as long as we could, and then to fire at them with our small Arms as long as we could; but when neither of these would do any longer, we should retire to our close Quarters; perhaps they had not Materials to break open our Bulk-heads, or get in upon us.

The Gunner had in the mean Time, Order to bring two Guns to bear fore and aft out of the Steerage, to clear the Deck, and load them with Musquet-Bullets and small Pieces of old Iron, and what next came to Hand, and thus we made ready for Fight; but all this while we kept out to Sea, with Wind enough; and could see the Boats at a Dis-



R. Crusoe at Cambodia in danger of being Seiz'd by the
East India Company's Boats for a Pyrate

THE FARTHER ADVENTURES OF ROBINSON
CRUSOE. Vol. III. *Facing page 119*





tance, being five large *Long-Boats*, following us with all the sail they could make.

Two of those Boats, which by our Glasses we could see were *English*, out sailed the rest, were near two Leagues a Head of them, and gain'd upon us considerably; so that we found they would come up with us; upon which, we fired Gun without Ball, to intimate, that they should bring too, and we put out a Flag of Truce; as a Signal for Parley, but they kept crowding after us, till they came within Shot: When we took in our White Flag, they having made no Answer to it, hung out a red Flag, and fired at them with a Shot: Notwithstanding this, they came on, till they were near enough to call to them with a speaking Trumpet, which we had on Board; so we call'd to them, and bid them keep off at their Peril.

It was all one, they crowded after us, and endeavoured to come under our Stern, so to board us on our Quarter; upon which, seeing they were resolute for Mischief, and depended upon the strength that followed them, I ordered to bring the Ship too, so that they lay upon our Broad-side, when immediately we fir'd five Guns at them; one of which, had been levelled so true, as to carry away the Stern of the hindermost Boat, and bring them to the Necessity of taking down their Sail, and running all to the Head of the Boat to keep her from sinking; so she lay by, and had enough of it; but seeing the foremost Boat crowd on after us, we made ready to fire at her in particular.

While this was doing, one of the three Boats that was behind, being forwarder than the other two, made up to the Boat which we had disabled, to relieve her, and we could afterwards see her take out the Men; we call'd again to the foremost Boat, and offer'd a Truce to parley again, and to know what was her Business with us; but had no

Answer, only she crowded close under our Stern; upon this our Gunner, who was a very dexterous Fellow, run out his two Chase-Guns, and fired again at her; but the Shot missing, the Men in the Boat shouted, wav'd their Caps, and came on; but the Gunner getting quickly ready again, fir'd among them the second Time; one Shot of which, tho' it miss'd the Boat it self, yet fell in among the Men, and we could easily see, had done a great deal of Mischief among them; but we taking no Notice of that, war'd the Ship again, and brought our Quarter to bear upon them; and firing three Guns more, we found the Boat was split almost to Pieces; in particular, her Rudder, and a Piece of her Stern was shot quite away, so they handed their Sail immediately, and were in great Disorder; but to complete their Misfortune, our Gunner let fly two Guns at them again; where he hit them we could not tell, but we found the Boat was sinking, and some of the Men already in the Water; upon this, I immediately man'd out our Pinnace, which we had kept close by our Side, with Orders to pick up some of the Men if they could, and save them from drowning, and immediately to come on board with them; because we saw the rest of the Boats began to come up; Our Men in the Pinnace followed their Orders, and took up three Men; one of which was just drowning, and it was a good while before we could recover him; as soon as they were on Board, we crouded all the Sail we could make, and stood farther out to Sea, and we found that when the other three Boats came up to the first two, they gave over their Chace.

Being thus deliver'd from a Danger, which tho' I knew not the Reason of it, yet seem'd to be much greater than I apprehended; I took Care that we would change our Course, and not let any one imagine whither we were go-

ing; so we stood out to Sea Eastward, quite out of the Course of all *European* Ships, whether they were bound to *China*, or any where else, within the Commerce of the *European* Nations.

When we were now at Sea, we began to consult with the two Seamen, and enquire first what the meaning of all this should be, and the *Dutch* Man let us into the secret of it at once; telling us that the Fellow that sold us the Ship, *as we said*, was no more than a Thief, that had run away with her: Then he told us, how the Captain, whose Name too he told us, tho' I do not remember, was treacherously murdered by the Natives on the Coast of *Mallaca*, with three of his Men, and that he, this *Dutch* Man, and four more, got into the Woods, where they wandered about a great while; till at length, he in particular, in a miraculous manner made his Escape, and swam off to a *Dutch* Ship, which sailing near the Shore, in its Way from *China*, had sent their Boat on Shore for fresh Water; that he durst not come to that Part of the Shore where the Boat was, but [made] shift in the Night, to take the Water farther off, and the Ship's Boat took him up.

He then told us, that he went to *Battavia*, where two of the Sea-men belonging to the Ship arriv'd, having deserted the rest in their Travels, and gave an Account that the Fellow who had run away with the Ship, sold her at *Bengale*, to a Set of Pirates, which were gone a Cruising in her; and that they had already taken an *English* Ship and two *Dutch* Ships very richly laden.

This later Part we found to concern us directly, and tho' we knew it to be false; yet as my Partner said very well, if we had fallen into their Hands, and they had had such a Prepossession against us beforehand, it had been in vain for us to have defended our selves, or to hope for

any good Quarter at their Hands, and especially considering that our Accusers had been our Judges, and that we could have expected nothing from them, but what Rage would have dictated, and an ungoverned Passion have executed; and therefore it was his Opinion, we should go directly back to *Bengale*, from whence we came, without putting in at any Port whatever; because there, we could give a good Account of our selves, could prove where we were when the Ship put in, who we bought her of, and the like; and which was more than all the rest, if we were put to the Necessity of bringing it before the proper Judges, we should be sure to have some Justice, and not be hang'd first, and judg'd afterward.

I was sometime of my Partner's Opinion; but after a little more serious thinking, I told him, I thought it was a very great Hazard for us to attempt returning to *Bengale*, for that we were on the wrong side of the Straits of *Malacca*; and that if the Alarm was given, we should be sure to be Way-laid on every side, as well by the *Dutch* of *Battavia*, as the *English* else-where; that if we should be taken, as it were, running away, we should even condemn our selves, and there would want no more Evidence to destroy us; I also asked the *English* Sailor's Opinion, who said, he was of my Mind, and that we should certainly be taken.

This Danger, a little startled my Partner and all the Ship's Company; and we immediately resolved to go away to the Coast of *Tonquin*, and so on to the Coast of *China*, and pursuing the first Design as to Trade, find some Way or other to dispose of the Ship, and come back in some of the Vessels of the Country, such as we could get: This was approved of as the best Method for our Security; and accordingly we steered away N.N.E. keep-

ing above fifty Leagues off from the usual Course to the Eastward.

This however put us to some Inconveniencies; for first the Winds, when we came to the Distance from the Shore, seem'd to be more steadily against us, blowing almost Trade, *as we call it*, from the East, and E.N.E. so that we were a long while upon our Voyage, and we were but ill provided with Victuals for so long a Voyage; and which was still worse, there was some Danger that those *English* and *Dutch* Ships, whose Boats pursued us, whereof some were bound that Way, might be got in before us, and if not, some other Ship, bound to *China*, might have Information of us from them, and pursue us with the same Vigour.

I must confess, I was now very uneasy, and thought myself, including the late Escape from the Long-Boats, to have been in the most dangerous Condition that ever I was in thro' all my past Life; for whatever ill Circumstances I had been in, I was never pursu'd for a Thief before; nor had I ever done any Thing that merited the Name of Dishonest or Fraudulent, much less Thievish. I had chiefly been my own Enemy, or as I may rightly say, I had been no Body's Enemy but my own: But now I was embarrass'd in the worst Condition imaginable; for tho' I was perfectly innocent, I was in no Condition to make that Innocence appear: And if I had been taken, it had been under a supposed Guilt of the worst Kind; at least, a Crime esteem'd so among the People I had to do with.

This made me very anxious to make an Escape, tho', which Way to do it, I knew not, or what Port or Place we should go to: My Partner seeing me thus dejected, tho' he was the most concern'd at first, began to encourage me; and discribing to me the several Ports of that Coast,

told me he would put in on the Coast of *Chochinchina*, or the Bay of *Tonquin*, intending to go afterwards to *Macao*, a Town once in the Possession of the *Portuguese*, and where still a great many *European* Families resided, and particularly the Missionary Priests usually went thither, in order to their going forward to *China*.

Hither then we resolv'd to go; and accordingly, tho' after a tedious and irregular Course, and very much straitned for Provisions, we came within Sight of the Coast very early in the Morning; and upon Reflection upon the past Circumstances we were in, and the Danger if we had not escaped, we resolv'd to put into a small River, which however had a Depth enough of Water for us, and to see if we could, either over Land, or by the Ship's Pinnace, come to know what Ships were in any Port thereabouts. This happy Step, was indeed our Deliverance; for tho' we did not immediately see any *European* Ships in the Bay of *Tonquin*, yet the next Morning there came into the Bay two *Dutch Ships*, and a third without any Colours spread out, but which we believ'd to be a *Dutch* Man, pass'd by at about two Leagues Distance, steering for the Coast of *China*; and in the Afternoon went by two *English* Ships steering the same Course; and thus, we thought, we saw our selves beset with Enemies, both one Way or other. The Place we were in was wild and barbarous, the People Thieves, even by Occupation or Profession; and tho' it is true we had not much to seek of them, and except getting a few Provisions, car'd not how little we had to do with them, yet it was with much Difficulty that we kept our selves from being insulted by them several Ways.

We were in a small River of this Country, within a few Leagues of its utmost Limits Northward; and by our Boat we coasted North-East to the Point of Land, which

opens the great Bay of *Tonquin*; and it was in this beating up along the Shore, that we discover'd, as above, that in a Word, we were surrounded with Enemies. The People we were among, were the most barbarous of all the Inhabitants of the Coast; having no Correspondence with any other Nation, and dealing only in Fish, and Oil, and such gross Commodities; and it may be particularly seen, that they are, *as I said*, the most barbarous of any of the Inhabitants, (*viz.*) that among other Customs they have this as one, (*viz.*) That if any Vessel have the Misfortune to be shipwreck'd upon their Coast, they presently make their Men all Prisoners or Slaves; and it was not long before we found a Spice of their Kindness this Way, on the Occasion following.

I have observed above, that our Ship sprung a Leak at Sea, and that we could not find it out; and however, it happen'd, that as I have said it was stopp'd unexpectedly in the happy Minute of our being to be seiz'd by the *Dutch* and *English* Ships in the Bay of *Siam*; yet as we did not find the Ship so perfectly fit and sound as we desir'd, we resolv'd, while we were in this Place, to lay her on Shore, take out what heavy Things we had on Board, which were not many, and to wash and clean her Bottom, and, if possible, to find out where the Leaks were.

Accordingly, having lighten'd the Ship, and brought all our Guns and other moveable Things to one side, we try'd to bring her down, that we might come at her Bottom; but on second Thoughts we did not care to lay her dry on Ground, neither could we find out a proper Place for it.

The Inhabitants, who had never been acquainted with such a sight, came wondering down to the Shore, to look at us; and seeing the Ship lie down on one Side in such a

manner, and heeling in towards the Shore; and not seeing our Men, who were at Work on her Bottom, with Stages and with their Boats on the off-side, they presently concluded, that the Ship was cast away, and lay so fast on the Ground.

On this Supposition they came all about us in two or three Hours time, with ten or twelve large Boats, having some of them eight, some ten Men in a Boat, intending, no doubt, to have come on Board, and plunder'd the Ship; and if they had found us there, to have carry'd us away for Slaves to their King, or whatever they call him; for we knew nothing who was their Governour.

When they came up to the Ship, and began to row round her, they discover'd us all hard at Work on the Outside of the Ship's bottom and side, washing, and graving, and stopping, as every seafaring Man knows how.

They stood for a while gazing at us, and we, who were a little surpriz'd, could not imagine what their Design was; but, being *willing to be sure*, we took this Opportunity to get some of us into the Ship, and others to hand down Arms and Ammunition to those that were at Work, to defend themselves with, if there should be Occasion; and it was no more than Need; for in less than a quarter of an Hour's Consultation, they agreed, it seems, that the Ship was really a Wreck, that we were all at Work endeavouring to save her, or to save our Lives by the Help of our Boats, and when we handed our Arms into the Boats, they concluded, by that Motion, that we were endeavouring to save some of our Goods; upon this they took it for granted we all belong'd to them; and away they came down upon our Men, as if it had been in a Line of Battle.

Our Men, seeing so many of them, began to be fright-

ed; for we lay but in an ill Posture to fight, and cry'd out to us to know what they should do: I immediately call'd to the Men who work'd upon the Stages, to slip them down, and get up the side into the Ship; and bad those in the Boat to row round and come on Board; and those few of us, who were on board, work'd with all the strength and hands we had, to bring the Ship to Rights; but however, neither the Men upon the Stages or those in the Boats, could do as they were order'd, before the *Cockin-chinnesses* were upon them; and two of their Boats boarded our Long-Boat, and began to lay hold of the Men as their Prisoners.

The first Man they laid hold of was an *English* Seaman, a stout strong Fellow, who having a Musket in his Hand, never offer'd to fire it, but laid it down in the Boat, *like a Fool, as I thought*: But he understood his Business better than I could teach him; for he grappled the Pagan, and dragg'd him by main Force, out of their own Boat into ours; where, taking him by the two Ears, he beat his Head, so against the Boat's Gunnel, that the Fellow dy'd instantly in his Hands; and in the mean time, a *Dutch* Man, who stood next, took up the Musket, and with the But-end of it, so laid about him, that he knock'd down five of them, who attempted to enter the Boat; But this was doing little towards resisting thirty or forty Men, who fearless, because ignorant of their Danger, began to throw themselves into the Long-Boat, where we had but five Men in all to defend it: But one Accident gave our Men a compleat Victory, which deserv'd our Laughter rather than any Thing else, and that was this:

Our Carpenter being preparing to grave the Out-side of the Ship, as well as to pay the Seams, where he had caulk'd her to stop the Leakes, had got two Kettles just

let down into the Boat; one fill'd with boiling Pitch, and the other with Rosin, Tallow, and Oil, and such Stuff, as the Ship-Wrights use for that Work; and the Man that tended the Carpenter, had a great Iron Ladle in his Hand, with which he supply'd the Men that were at Work with that hot Stuff; two of the Enemies Men entred the Boat just where this Fellow stood, being in the Fore-sheets; he immediately saluted them with a Ladle full of the Stuff, boiling hot, which so burnt and scalded them, being half naked, that they roar'd out like two Bulls, and, enrag'd with the Fire, leap'd both into the Sea: The Carpenter saw it, and cry'd out, Well done, *Jack*, give them some more of it; and stepping forward himself, takes one of their Mops, and dipping it in the Pitch-Pot, he and his Man threw it among them so plentifully that, in short, of all the Men in three Boats, there was not one that was not scalded, and burnt with it in a most frightful pitiful Manner, and made such a Howling and Crying, that I never heard a worse Noise, and indeed nothing like it; for it is worth observing, That tho' Pain naturally makes all People cry out, yet every Nation has a particular Way of Exclamation, and make Noises as different from one another, as their Speech; I cannot give the Noise, these Creatures made, a better Name than Howling, nor a Name more proper to the Tone of it; for I never heard any Thing more like the Noise of the Wolves, which as I have said, I heard howl in the Forest on the Frontiers of *Languedoc*.

I was never pleas'd with a Victory better in my Life; not only as it was a perfect Surprise to me, and that our Danger was imminent before: but as we got this Victory without any Blood shed, except of that Man the Fellow kill'd with his naked Hands, and which I was very much

concern'd at; for I was sick of killing such poor Savage Wretches, even tho' it was in my own Defence, knowing they came on Errands which they thought just, and knew no better; and that tho' it may be a just Thing, because necessary, for there is no necessary Wickedness in Nature, yet I thought it was a sad Life, which we must be always oblig'd to be killing our Fellow-Creatures to preserve, and indeed I think so still; and I would even now suffer a great deal, rather than I would take away the Life, even of that Person injuring me: And I believe, all considering People, who know the Value of Life, would be of my opinion, at least, they would, if they entred seriously into the Consideration of it.

But to return to my Story, all the while this was doing, my Partner and I, who manag'd the rest of the Men on Board, had with great Dexterity brought the Ship almost to Rights; and having gotten the Guns into their Places again, the Gunner call'd to me, to bid our Boat get out of the Way, for he would let fly among them. I call'd back again to him, and bid him not offer to fire, for the Carpenter would do the Work without him, but bad him heat another Pitch-Kettle, which our Cook, who was on Board, took Care of: But the Enemy were so terrify'd with what they had met with in their first Attack, that they would not come on again; and some of them that were farthest off, seeing the Ship swim, as it were upright, begun, as we supposed, to see their Mistake, and give over the Enterprize, finding it was not as they expected: Thus we got clear of this merry Fight; and having gotten some Rice, and some Roots, and Bread, with about sixteen good big Hogs on Board, two Days before, we resolv'd to stay here no longer, but go forward whatever came of it; for we made no Doubt but we should be surrounded the next

Day with Rogues enough, perhaps more than our Pitch-Kettle would dispose of for us.

We therefore got all our Things on Board the same Evening, and the next Morning was ready to sail; in the mean time, lying at an Anchor at some Distance, we were not so much concern'd, being now in a fighting Posture, as well as in a sailing Posture, if any Enemy had presented: The next Day having finish'd our Work within Board, and finding our Ship was perfectly heal'd of all her Leaks, we set sail; we would have gone into the Bay of *Tonquin*; for we wanted to inform ourselves of what was to be known concerning the *Dutch* Ships that had been there; but we durst not stand in there, because we had seen several Ships go in, as we suppos'd, but a little before; so we kept on N. E. towards the Isle of *Formosa*, as much afraid of being seen by a *Dutch* or *English* Merchant Ship, as a *Dutch* or *English* Merchant Ship in the *Mediterranean* is of an *Algerine* Man of War.

When we were thus got to Sea, we kept out N. E. as if we would go to the *Munillas* or the *Phillippine* Islands; and this we did, that we might not fall into the Way of any of our *European* Ships; and then we steer'd North 'till we came to the Latitude of 22 Degrees, 30 Min.; by which Means we made the Island *Formosa* directly, where we came to an Anchor, in order to get Water and fresh Provisions, which the People there, who are very courteous and civil in their Manners, supply'd us with willingly, and dealt very fairly and punctually with us in all their Agreements and Bargains; which is what we did not find among other People; and may be owing to the Remains of Christianity, which was once planted here by a *Dutch* Missionary of Protestants, and is a Testimony of what I have often observ'd, *viz.* That the Christian Religion al-

ways civilizes the People, and reforms their Manners, where it is receiv'd, whether it works saving Effects upon them or no.

From hence we sail'd still North, keeping the Coast of *China* at an equal Distance, till we knew we were beyond all the Ports of *China*, where our *European* Ships usually come; being resolv'd, if possible, not to fall into any of their Hands, especially in this Country, where, as our Circumstances were, we could not fail of being entirely ruin'd; nay, so great was my Fear in particular, as to my being taken by them, that I believe firmly, I would much rather have chosen to fall into the Hands of the *Spanish Inquisition*.

Being now come to the Latitude of 30 Degrees, we resolv'd to put into the first trading Port we should come at; and standing in for the Shore, a Boat came off two Leagues to us, with an old *Portuguese* Pilot on Board, who knowing us to be an *European* Ship, came to offer his Service, which indeed we were very glad of, and took him on Board; upon which, without asking us whether we would go, he dismiss'd the Boat he came in, and sent them back.

I thought it was now so much in our Choice, to make the old Man carry us whither we would; that I began to talk with him about carrying us to the Gulph of *Nanquin*, which is the most Northern Part of the Coast of *China*: The old Man said he knew the Gulph of *Nanquin* very well; but smiling, ask'd us what we would do there?

I told him, we would sell our Cargo, and purchase *China*-Wares, Callicoes, Raw-Silks, Tea, Wrought-Silks, &c. and so would return by the same Course we came: He told us our best Port had been to have put in at *Macao*, where we could not have fail'd of a Market for our Opium, to our Satisfaction, and might for our Money have pur-

chas'd all Sorts of *China*-Goods, as cheap as we could at *Nanquin*.

Not being able to put the old Man out of his Talk, of which he was very opinionated or conceited, I told him, we were Gentlemen, as well as Merchants, and that we had a Mind to go and see the great City of *Pecking*, and the famous Court of the Monarch of *China*. Why then, says the old Man, you should go to *Ningpo*, where, by the River which runs into the Sea there, you may go up within five Leagues of the *Great Canal*. This Canal is a navigable River, which goes thorow the Heart of that vast Empire of *China*, crosses all the Rivers, passes some considerable Hills by the Help of Sluices and Gates, and goes up to the City of *Pecking*, being in Length near 270 Leagues.

Well, said I, *Seignior Portuguese*, but that is not our Business now: The great Question is, If you can carry us up to the City of *Nanquin*, from whence we can travel to *Pecking* afterwards? Yes, he said, he could do so very well, and that there was a great *Dutch* Ship gone up that Way just before. This gave me a little Shock; and a *Dutch* Ship was now our Terror, and we had much rather have met the Devil, at least, if he had not come in too frightful a Figure; and we depended upon it, that a *Dutch* Ship would be our Destruction, for we were in no Condition to fight them; all the Ships they trade with into those Parts being of great Burthen, and of much greater Force than we were.

The old Man found me a little confus'd, and under some Concern, when he nam'd a *Dutch* Ship, and said to me, Sir you need be under no Apprehensions of the *Dutch*, I suppose they are not now at War with your Nation: No, says I, that's true; but I know not what Liberties Men

may take when they are out of the Reach of the Law: Why, says he, *you are no Pirates*, what need you fear? They will not meddle with peaceable Merchants sure.

If I had any Blood in my Body that did not fly up into my Face at that Word, it was hinder'd by some Stop in the Vessels, appointed by Nature to prevent it; for it put me into the greatest Disorder and Confusion imaginable: Nor was it possible for me to conceal it so, but that the old Man easily perceiv'd it.

Sir, says he, I find you are in some Disorder in your Thoughts at my Talk, pray be pleas'd to go which Way you think fit, and depend upon it, I'll do you all the Service I can. Why, Seignior, said I, it is true I am a little unsettled in my Resolution at this Time whither to go in particular; and I am something more so, for what you said about *Pirates*, I hope there are no Pirates in these Seas; we are but in an ill Condition to meet with them, for you see we have but a small Force, and but very weakly mann'd.

O Sir, says he, do not be concern'd, I do not know that there has been any Pirates in these Seas these fifteen Years, except one which was seen, as I hear, in the Bay of *Siam*, about a Month since; but you may be assured she is gone to the Southward; nor was she a Ship of any great Force, or fit for the Work; she was not built for a Privateer, but was run away with by a reprobate Crew that were on Board, after the Captain and some of his Men had been murder'd by the *Malayans*, at or near the Island of *Sumatra*.

What! SAID I, *seeming to know nothing of the Matter*, did they murder the Captain? No, said he, I do not understand that they murder'd him; but as they afterwards run away with the Ship, it is generally believ'd they be-

tray'd him into the Hands of the *Malayans*, who did murder him, and perhaps they procur'd them to do it: Why then, *said I*, they deserve Death as much as if they had done it themselves: Nay, *says the old Man*, they do deserve it, and they will certainly have it, if they light upon any *English* or *Dutch* Ship; for they have all agreed together, that if they meet that Rogue, they will give him no Quarter.

But, *said I to him*, you say the Pirate is gone out of those Seas, how can they meet with him? Why, that is true, says he, they do say so; but he was, as I tell you, in the Bay of *Siam*, in the River *Cambodia*, and was discovered there by some *Dutch* Men who belonged to the Ship, and who were left on Shore when they run away with her; and some *English* and *Dutch* Traders being in the River, they were within a little of taking him: Nay, *said he*, if the foremost Boats had been well seconded by the rest, they had certainly taken him; but he finding only two Boats within Reach of him, tack'd about, and fir'd at these two, and disabled them before the other came up, and then standing off to Sea, the other were not able to follow him, and so he got away: But they have all so exact a Description of the Ship, that they will be sure to know him; and where-ever they find him, they have vow'd to give no Quarter to either the Captain, or the Seamen, but to hang them all up at the Yard-Arm.

What! says I, will they execute them right or wrong, hang them first, and judge them afterwards? O Sir! says the old Pilot, there's no Need to make a formal Business of it with such Rogues as those, let them tye them Back to Back, and set them a diving; 'tis no more than they richly deserve.

I knew I had my old Man fast aboard, and that he could do me no Harm, so that I turn'd short upon him:

Well now, Seignior, said I, and this is the very Reason, why I would have you carry us up to *Nanquin*, and not to put back to *Macao*, or to any other part of the Country, where the *English* or *Dutch* Ships come; for be it known to you, Seignior, those Captains of the *English* and *Dutch* Ships, are a Parcel of rash, proud, insolent Fellows, that neither knows what belongs to Justice, nor how to behave themselves, as the Laws of God and Nature direct; but being proud of their Offices, and not understanding their Power, they would act the Murtherers to punish Robbers; would take upon them to insult Men falsely accused, and determine them guilty without due Enquiry; and perhaps I may live to call some of them to an Account for it, where they may be taught how Justice is to be executed, and that no Man ought to be treated as a Criminal, 'till some Evidence may be had of the Crime, and that he is the Man.

With this I told him, that this was the very Ship they attack'd, and gave him a full Account of the Skirmish we had with their Boats, and how foolishly and coward-like they behav'd. I told him all the Story of our buying the Ship, and how the *Dutch* Men served us. I told him the Reasons I had to believe that this Story of killing the Master by the *Malayans* was true; as also the running away with the Ship; but that it was all a Fiction of their own, to suggest that the Men were turn'd *Pirates*; and they ought to have been sure it was so, before they had ventur'd to attack us by Surprise, and oblige us to resist them; adding that they would have the Blood of those Men, who we kill'd there in our just Defence, to answer for.

The old Man was amaz'd at this Relation, and told us, we were very much in the Right to go away to the *North*,

and that if he might advise us, it should be to sell the Ship in *China*, which we might very well do, and buy or build another in the Country; and, said he, though you will not get so good a Ship, yet you may get one able enough to carry you and all your Goods back again to *Bengale*, or any where else.

I told him, I would take his Advice, when I came to any Port where I could find a Ship for my Turn, or get any Customer to buy this: He reply'd, I should meet with Customers enough for the Ship at *Nanquin*, and that a *Chinese* Jonk would serve me very well to go back again; and that he would procure me People, both to buy one and sell the other.

Well, but *Seignior*, says I, as you say they know the Ship so well, I may perhaps, if I follow your Measures, be instrumental to bring some honest innocent Men into a terrible Broil, and perhaps to be murther'd in cold Blood; for wherever they find the Ship, they will prove the Guilt upon the Men, by proving this was the Ship, and so innocent Men may probably be overpower'd and murther'd: Why, says the old Man, I'll find out a Way to prevent that also; for as I know all those Commanders you speak of very well, and shall see them all as they pass by, I will be sure to set them to Rights in the Thing, and let them know that they had been so much in the Wrong; that tho' the People, who were on board at first, might run away with the Ship, yet it was not true that they had turned Pirates; and that in particular, these were not the Men that first went off with the Ship, but innocently bought her for their Trade; and I am persuaded they will so far believe me, as at least to act more cautiously for the Time to come. Well, says I, And will you deliver one Message to them from me? Yes, I will, says he, if you will give it under your

Hand in Writing, that I may be able to prove, that it came from you, and not out of my own Head. I answered, That I would readily give it him under my Hand; so I took a Pen, and Ink, and Paper, and wrote at large the Story of assaulting me with the Long-Boats, &c. the pretended Reason of it, and the unjust cruel Design of it; and concluded to the Commanders, that they had done what they not only should ha' been asham'd of, but also, that if ever they came to *England*, and I liv'd to see them there, they should all pay dearly for it, if the Laws of my Country were not grown out of Use before I arrived there.

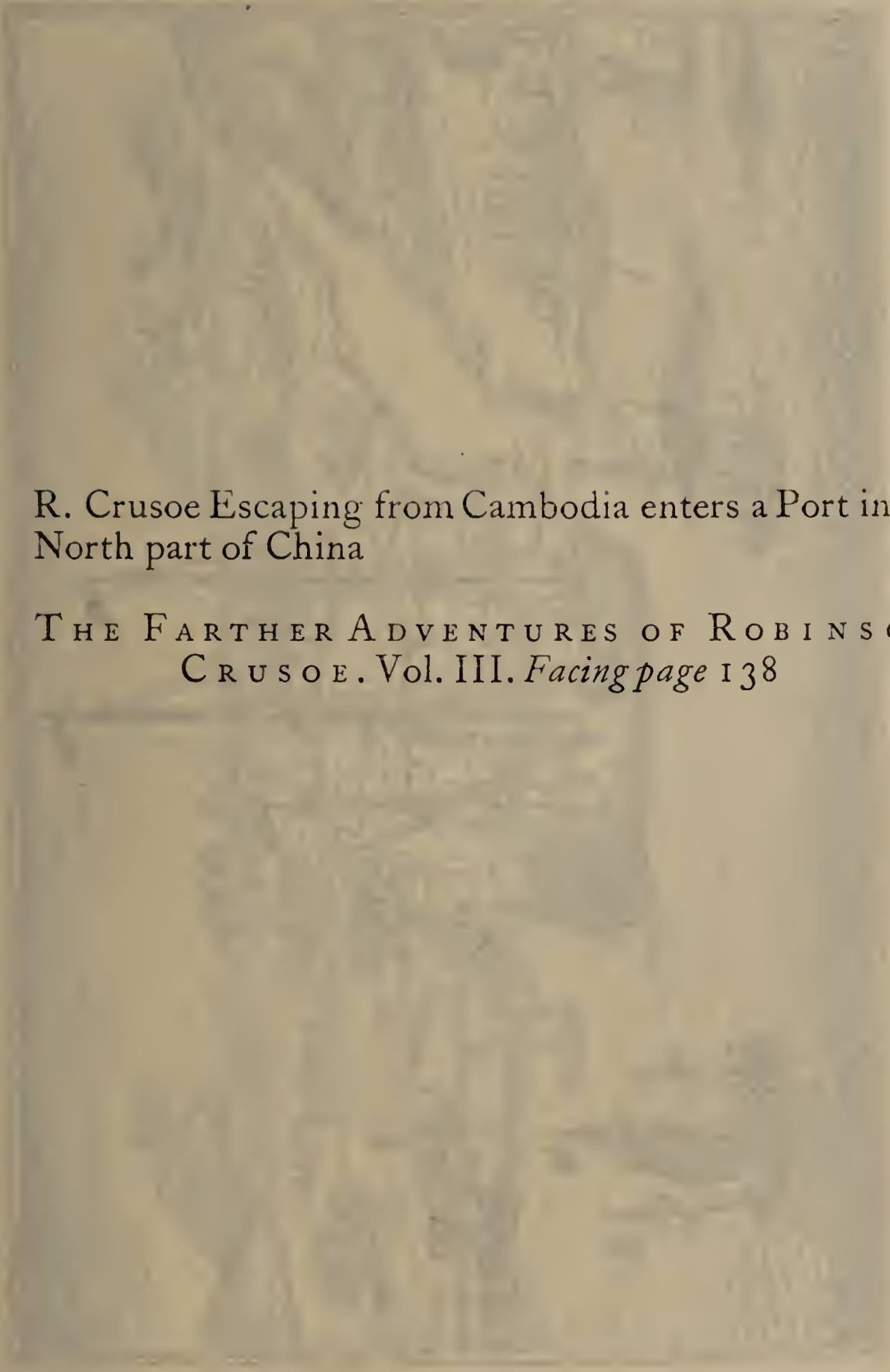
My old Pilot read this over and over again, and ask'd me several Times if I would stand to it? I answer'd, I would stand to it as long as I had any Thing left in the World, being sensible that I should one Time or other find an Opportunity to put it home to them: But we had no Occasion ever to let the Pilot carry this Letter; for he never went back again: While those Things were passing between us, by Way of Discourse, we went forward, directly for *Nanquin*, and in about thirteen Days Sail came to an Anchor at the South-West Point of the great Gulph of *Nanquin*, where, by the Way, I came by Accident to understand, that two *Dutch* Ships were gone the length before me, and that I should certainly fall into their Hands; I consulted my Partner again in this Exigency, and he was as much at a Loss as I was, and would very gladly have been safe on Shore almost any where; however, I was not in such Perplexity neither, but I ask'd the old Pilot, if there was no Creek or Harbour, which I might put into, and pursue my Business with the *Chinese* privately, and be in no Danger of the Enemy: he told me, if I would sail to the Southward about two and forty Leagues, there was a little Port call'd *Quinchang*, where the Fathers of the

Mission usually landed from *Macao*, on their Progress to teach the Christian Religion to the *Chinenses*, and where no *European* Ships ever put in; and if I thought to put in there, I might consider what farther Course to take when I was on Shore: He confess'd, he said, it was not a Place for Merchants, except that at some certain Times, they had a Kind of a Fair there, when the Merchants from *Japan* came over to buy the *Chinese* Merchandizes.

We all agreed to go back to this Place; the Name of the Port, as he call'd it, I may perhaps spell wrong; for I do not particularly remember it, having lost this, together with the Names of many other Places, set down in a little Pocket-Book, which was spoil'd by the Water, on an Accident, which I shall relate in its Order; but this I remember, that the *Chinese*, or *Japonesse* Merchants we corresponded with, call'd it by a differing Name from that which our *Portuguese* Pilot gave it, and pronounc'd it as above, *Quinchang*.

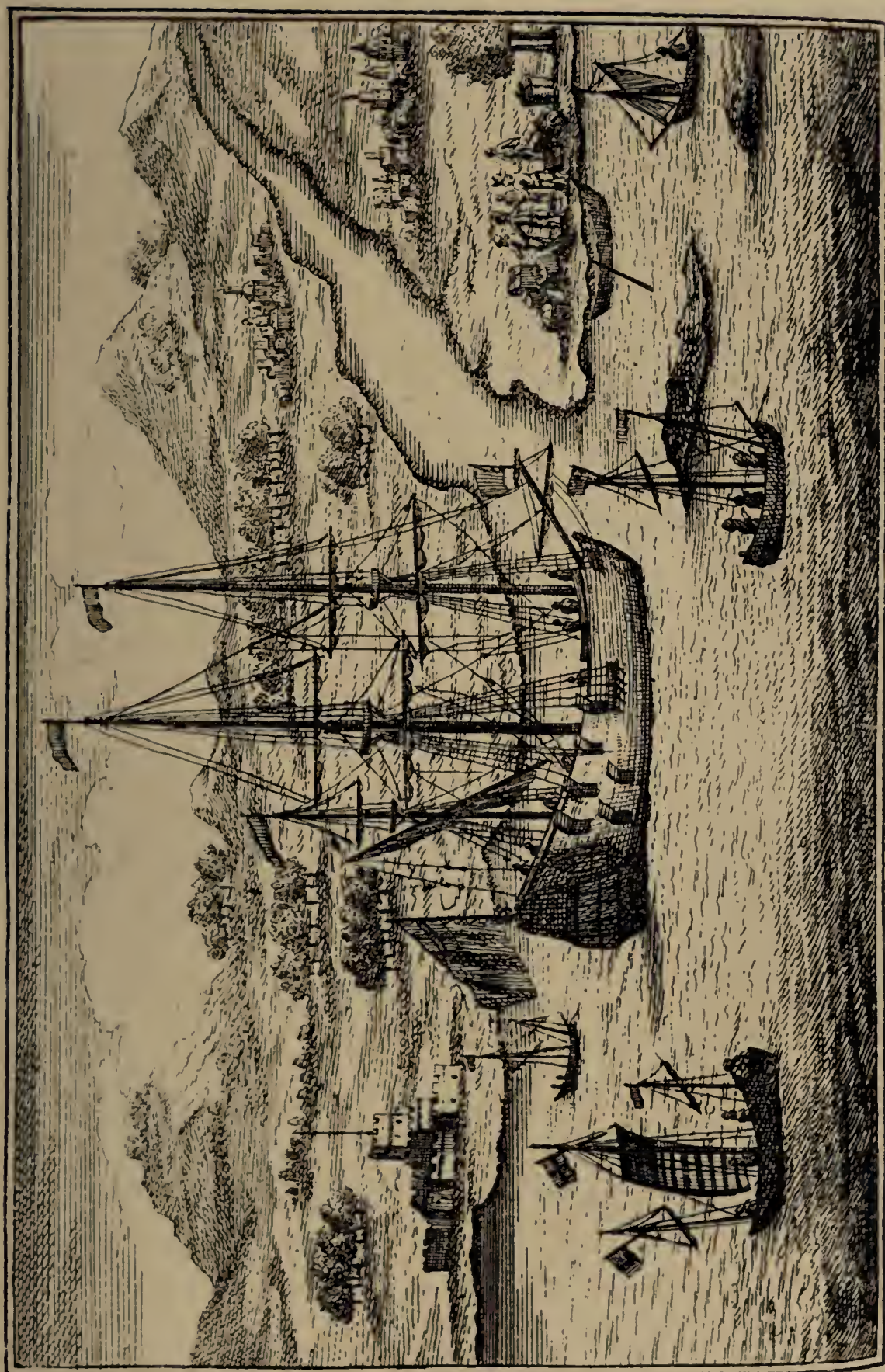
As we were unanimous in our Resolutions to go to this Place, we weigh'd the next Day, having only gone twice on Shore, where we were to get fresh Water; on both which Occasions, the People of the Country were very civil to us, and brought us abundance of Things *to sell to us*; I mean, of Provisions, Plants, Roots, Tea, Rice, and some Fowls; but nothing without Money.

We came to the other Port, (the Wind being contrary) not till five Days, but it was very much to our Satisfaction; and I was joyful, and I may say, thankful, when I set my Foot safe on Shore; resolving, and my Partner too, that if it was possible to dispose of our selves and Effects, any other Way, tho' not every Way to our Satisfaction, we would never set one Foot on board that unhappy Vessel more; and indeed I must acknowledge, that of all the



R. Crusoe Escaping from Cambodia enters a Port in ye
North part of China

THE FARTHER ADVENTURES OF ROBINSON
CRUSOE. Vol. III. *Facing page 138*





Circumstances of Life, that ever I had any Experience of, nothing makes Mankind so compleatly miserable, as that, of being in constant Fear: Well does the Scripture say, *the Fear of Man brings a Snare*; it is a Life of Death, and the Mind is so entirely suppress'd by it, that it is capable of no Relief; the animal Spirits sink, and all the Vigour of nature, which usually supports Men under other Afflictions, and is present to them in the greatest Exigencies, fails them here.

Nor did it fail of its usual Operations upon the Fancy, by heightening every Danger, representing the *English* and *Dutch* Captains, to be Men incapable of hearing Reason, or of distinguishing between honest Men and Rogues; or between a Story calculated for our own Turn, made out of nothing, on Purpose to deceive; and a true genuine Account of our whole Voyage, Progress, and Design; for we might many Ways have convinc'd any reasonable Creature, that we were not Pirates; the Goods we had on board, the Course we steer'd, our frankly shewing our selves, and entring into such and such Ports; and even our very Manner, the Force we had, the Number of Men, the few Arms, little Ammunition, short Provisions; all these would have serv'd to convince any Men, that we were no Pirates; the Opium, and other Goods we had on board, would make it appear, the Ship had been at *Bengale*; the *Dutch* Men, who it was said, had the Names of all the Men that was in the Ship, might easily see that we were a Mixture of *English*, *Portuguese*, and *Indians*, and but two *Dutch* Men on board: These, and many other particular Circumstances, might have made it evident to the Understanding of any Commander, whose Hands we might fall into, that we were no Pirates.

But Fear, that blind useless Passion, work'd another

Way, and threw us into the Vapours; it bewildred our Understandings, and set the Imagination at Work, to form a thousand terrible Things, that perhaps might never happen; we first suppos'd, as indeed every Body had related to us, that the Seamen on board the *English* and *Dutch* Ships, but especially the *Dutch*, were so enraged at the Name of a Pirate, and especially at our beating of their Boats, and escaping, that they would not give themselves leave to enquire, whether we were Pirates or no; but would execute us off Hand, as we call it, without giving us any Room for a Defence; we reflected that there was really so much apparent Evidence before them, that they would scarce enquire after any more; as first, That the Ship was certainly the same, and that some of the Seamen among them knew her, and had been on board her; and secondly, That when we had Intelligence at the River of *Cambodia*, that they were coming down to examine us, we fought their Boat and fled; so that we made no doubt but they were fully satisfy'd of our being Pirates, as we were satisfy'd of the contrary; and as I often said, I know not but I should have been apt to have taken those Circumstances for Evidence, if the Tables were turn'd, and my Case was theirs, and have made no Scruple of cutting all the Crew to Pieces, without believing, or perhaps considering, what they might have to offer in their Defence.

But let that be how it will, those were our Apprehensions; and both my Partner and I too, scarce slept a Night, without dreaming of Halters, and Yard-Arms; that is to say, Gibbets, of fighting, and being taken; of killing and being kill'd; and one Night I was in such a Fury in my Dream, fancying the *Dutch* Men had boarded us, and I was knocking one of their Seamen down, that I struck my double Fist against the Side of the Cabin I lay in, with

such a Force, as wounded my Hand most grievously, broke my Knuckles, and cut and bruised the Flesh; so that it not only wak'd me out of my Sleep, but I was once afraid I should have lost two of my Fingers.

Another Apprehension I had, was of the cruel Usage we might meet with from them, if we fell into their Hands; then the Story of *Amboyna* came into my Head, and how the *Dutch*, might perhaps torture us, as they did our Countrymen there; and make some of our Men, by Extremity of Torture, confess those Crimes they never were guilty of; own themselves, and all of us to be Pirates, and so they would put us to Death, with a formal Appearance of Justice; and that they might be tempted to do this, for the Gain of our Ship and Cargo, which was worth four or five thousand Pound, put altogether.

These Things tormented me and my Partner too, Night and Day; nor did we consider that the Captains of Ships have no Authority to act thus; and if we had surrender'd Prisoners to them, they could not answer the destroying us, or torturing us, but would be accountable for it, when they came into their own Country: This I say, gave me no Satisfaction; for if they will act thus with us, what Advantage would it be to us, that they would be call'd to an Account for it; or if we were first to be murdered, what Satisfaction would it be to us to have them punish'd when they came Home?

I cannot refrain taking Notice here, what Reflections I now had upon the past Variety of my particular Circumstances; how hard I thought it was, that I who had spent forty Years in a Life of continu'd Difficulties, and was at last come as it were to the Port or Haven, which all Men drive at, (*viz.*) to have Rest and Plenty, should be a Volunteer in new Sorrows, by my own unhappy Choice; and

that I, who escaped so many Dangers in my Youth, should now come to be hang'd in my old Age, and in so remote a Place, for a Crime I was not in the least inclin'd to, much less really guilty of; and in a Place and Circumstance, where Innocence was not like to be any Protection at all to me.

After these Thoughts, something of Religion would come in; and I should be considering, that this seem'd to me to be a Disposition of immediate Providence, and I ought to look upon it, and submit to it as such; that although I was innocent as to Men, I was far from being innocent as to my Maker; and I ought to look in and examine, what other Crimes in my Life, were most obvious to me; and for which, Providence might justly inflict this Punishment, as a Retribution; and that I ought to submit to this, just as I would to a Ship-wreck, if it had pleased God to have brought such a Disaster upon me.

In its Turn, Natural Courage would sometimes take its Place; and then I would betalking myself up to vigorous Resolutions, that I would not be taken, to be barbarously used by a Parcel of merciless Wretches, in cold Blood; that it were much better to have fallen into the Hands of the Savages, who were Man-Eaters, and who, I was sure, would feast upon me, when they had taken me; than by those, who would perhaps glut their Rage upon me, by inhuman Tortures and Barbarities; that in the Case of the Savages, I always resolv'd to die fighting, to the last Gasp; and why should I not do so, seeing it was much more dreadful *to me at least*, to think of falling into these Mens Hands, than ever it was to think of being eaten by Men; for the Savages, give them their due, would not eat a Man till he was dead, and kill'd them first,

as we do a Bullock; but that these Men had many Arts beyond the Cruelty of Death: When ever these Thoughts prevail'd, I was sure to put myself in a kind of Fever, with the Agitations of a supposed Fight; my Blood would boil, and my Eyes sparkle, as if I was engag'd; and I always resolv'd that I would take no Quarter at their Hands; but even at last, if I could resist no longer, I would blow up the Ship and all that was in her, and leave them but little Booty to boast of.

By how much the greater Weight, the Anxieties and Perplexities of these Things were to our Thoughts while we were at Sea, by so much the greater was our Satisfaction, when we saw our selves on Shore; and my Partner told me he dream'd, that he had a very heavy Load upon his Back, which he was to carry up a Hill, and found that he was not able to stand long under it; but that the *Portuguese* Pilot came and took it off his Back, and the Hill disappear'd, the Ground before him shewing all smooth and plain, and truly it was so, we were all like Men, who had a Load taken off their Backs.

For my Part, I had a Weight taken off from my Heart, that I was not able any longer to bear; and as I said above, we resolv'd to go no more to Sea in that Ship: When we came on Shore, the old Pilot, who was now our Friend, got us a Lodging and a Ware-House for our Goods, which by the Way, was much the same; it was a little House or Hut, with a large House joyning to it, all built with Canes, and pallisadoed round with large Canes, to keep out pilfering Thieves, of which, it seems there were not a few in that Country; however, the Magistrates allowed us also a little Guard, and we had a Sentinel with a kind of Halberd, or Half-pike, who stood Sentinel at our Door; to whom we allow'd a Pint of Rice, and a little Piece of Mo-

ney, about the Value of three Pence *per* Day, so that our Goods were kept very safe.

The Fair or Mart, usually kept in this Place, had been over some Time; however, we found that there were three or four Jonks in the River, and two *Japanners*, I mean, Ships from *Jappan*, with Goods which they had bought in *China*, and were not gone away, having *Japponese* Merchants on Shore.

The first Thing our old *Portuguese* Pilot did for us, was to bring us acquainted with three Missionary *Romish* Priests, who were in the Town, and who had been there some Time, converting the People to Christianity; but we thought they made but poor Work of it, and made them but sorry Christians when they had done; however, that was none of our Business: One of these was a *French* Man, who they call'd Father *Simon*; he was a jolly well condition'd Man, very free in his Conversation, not seeming so serious and grave, as the other two did; one of whom was a *Portuguese*, and the other a *Genoese*; but Father *Simon* was courteous, easy in his Manner, and very agreeable Company; the other two were more reserv'd, seem'd rigid and austere, and apply'd seriously to the Work they came about, (*viz.*) to talk with, and insinuate themselves among the Inhabitants, where-ever they had Opportunity; we often eat and drank with those Men, and tho' I must confess, the Conversion *as they call it*, of the *Chinenses* to Christianity, is so far from the true Conversion requir'd, to bring Heathen People to the Faith of Christ, that it seems to amount to little more, than letting them know the Name of Christ, and say some Prayers to the Virgin *Mary*, and her Son, in a Tongue which they understand not, and to cross themselves and the like; yet it must be confess'd, that these Religious, who we call Mis-

sionaries, have a firm Belief that these People shall be sav'd, and that they are the Instruments of it; and on this Account, they undergo not only the Fatigue of the Voyage, and Hazards of living in such Places, but oftentimes Death itself, with the most violent Tortures, for the Sake of this Work; and it would be a great Want of Charity in us, whatever Opinion we have of the Work itself, and the Manner of their doing it, if we should not have a good Opinion of their Zeal, who undertook it with so many Hazards, and who have no Prospect of the least Temporal Advantage to themselves.

But to return to my Story; this *French* Priest, Father *Simon*, was appointed it seems, by Order of the Chief of the Mission, to go up to *Peking*, the Royal Seat of the *Chinese* Emperor, and waited only for another Priest, who was order'd to come to him from *Macao*, to go along with him; and we scarce ever met together, but he was inviting me to go that Journey, telling me, how he would shew me all the glorious Things of that mighty Empire; and among the rest, the greatest City in the World; a City, said he, that your *London* and our *Paris* put together, cannot be equal to: This was the City of *Peking*, which I confess is very great, and infinitely full of People; but as I look'd on those Things with different Eyes from other Men, so I shall give my Opinion of them in few Words, when I come in the Course of my Travels, to speak more particularly of them.

But first, I come to my Fryar or Missionary; dining with him one Day, and being very merry together, I shew'd some little Inclination to go with him, and he press'd me and my Partner very hard, and with a great many Perswasions to consent; why Father *Simon*, says my Partner, why should you desire our Company so

much: You know we are Hereticks, and you do not love us, nor cannot keep us Company with any Pleasure? O! says he, You may perhaps be good Catholicks in Time; my Business here is to convert Heathens, and who knows but I may convert you too. Very well, Father, said I, so you will preach to us all the Way; I won't be troublesome to you, says he; our Religion does not divest us of good Manners; besides, says he, we are here like Countrymen, and so we are, compared to the Place we are in; and if you are Hugonots, and I a Catholick, we maybe all Christians at last; at least, said he, we are all Gentlemen, and we may converse so, without being uneasy to one another. I lik'd that Part of his Discourse very well, and it began to put me in Mind of my Priest, that I had left in the *Brasils*; but this Father *Simon* did not come up to his Character, by a great deal; for tho' Father *Simon* had no Appearance of a Criminal Levity in him neither, yet he had not that Fund of Christian Zeal, strict Piety, and sincere Affection to Religion, that my other good Ecclesiastick had, of whom I have said so much.

But to leave him a little, tho' he never left us, nor soliciting us to go with him; but we had something else before us at first; for we had all this while our Ship, and our Merchandize to dispose of, and we began to be very doubtful what we should do, for we were now in a Place of very little Business; and once I was about to venture to sail for the River of *Kilam*, and the City of *Nanquin*: But Providence seem'd now more visibly as I thought, than ever, to concern itself in our Affair; and I was encouraged from this very Time, to think, I should one Way or other get out of this tangled Circumstance, and be brought Home to my own Country again, tho' I had not the least View of the Manner: and when I began sometimes to think of it,

could not imagine by what Method it was to be done: Providence, *I say*, began here to clear up our Way a little; and the first Thing that offered was, that our old *Portuguese* Pilot brought a *Japan* Merchant to us, who began to enquire what Goods we had; and in the first Place, he bought all our Opium, and gave us a very good Price for it, paying us in Gold by Weight, some in small Pieces of their own Coin, and some in small Wedges, of about ten or eleven Ounces each. While we were dealing with him for our Opium, it came into my Head, that he might perhaps deal with us for the Ship too, and I ordered the Interpreter to propose it to him; he shrunk up his Shoulders at it, when it was first propos'd to him; but in a few Days after, he came to me with one of the missionary Priests for his Interpreter, and told me, he had a Proposal to make to me, and that was this; he had bought a great Quantity of Goods of us, when he had no Thoughts (or Proposals made to him) of buying the Ship; and that therefore, he had not Money enough to pay for the Ship; but if I would let the same Men who were in the Ship navigate her, he would hire the Ship to go to *Japan*, and would send them from thence to the *Philippine* Islands with another Loading, which he would pay the Freight of, before they went from *Japan*; and that at their Return, he would buy the Ship: I began to listen to his Proposal, and so eager did my Head still run upon Rambling, that I could not but begin to entertain a Notion of going my self with him, and so to sail from the *Philippine* Islands, away to the South Seas; and accordingly I ask'd the *Japanese* Merchant, if he would not hire us to the *Philippine* Islands, and discharge us there; he said, no he could not do that, for then he could not have the return of his Cargo; but he would discharge us in *Japan*, he said, at the Ship's Return. Well,

still I was for taking him at that Proposal, and going myself; but my Partner, wiser than myself, persuaded me from it, representing the Dangers as well of the Seas, as of the *Japaneses*, who are a false, cruel, and treacherous People; and then of the *Spaniards*, at the *Philippines*, more false, more cruel, and more treacherous than they.

But to bring this long Turn of our Affairs to a Conclusion; the first Thing we had to do, was to consult with the Captain of the Ship, and with his Men, and know if they were willing to go to *Japan*; and while I was doing this, the young Man, who, as I said, my Nephew had left with me as my Companion for my Travels, came to me, and told me, that he thought that Voyage promised very fair, and that there was a great Prospect of Advantage, and he would be very glad if I undertook it; but that if I would not, and would give him leave, he would go as a Merchant, or how I pleas'd to order him; that if ever he came to *England*, and I was there and alive, he would render me a faithful Account of his Success, and it should be as much mine as I pleas'd.

I was really loth to part with him, but considering the Prospect of Advantage which was really considerable, and that he was a young Fellow, as likely to do well in it, as any I knew, I inclin'd to let him go; but first I told him, I would consult my Partner, and give him an Answer the next Day; my Partner and I discours'd about it, and my Partner made a most generous Offer; he told me, you know it has been an unlucky Ship, and we both resolve not to go to Sea in it again; if your Steward, *so he call'd my Man*, will venture the Voyage, I'll leave my Share of the Vessel to him, and let him make his best of it; and if we live to meet in *England*, and he meets with Success abroad,

he shall account for one Half of the Profits of the Ship's Freight to us, the other shall be his own.

If my Partner, who was no Way concerned with my young Man, made him such an Offer, I could do no less than offer him the same; and all the Ship's Company being willing to go with him, we made over Half the Ship to him in Property, and took a Writing from him, obliging him to account for the other, and away he went to *Japan*: The *Japan* Merchant prov'd a very punctual honest Man to him, protected him at *Japan*, and got him a License to come on Shore, which the *Europeans* in general have not lately obtained; pay'd him his Freight very punctually, sent him to the *Philippines*, loaded with *Japan*, and *China* Wares, and a Supra-Cargo of their own, who trafficking with the *Spaniards*, brought back *European* Goods again, and a great Quantity of Cloves, and other Spice; and there he was not only pay'd his Freight very well, and at a very good Price, but being not willing to sell the Ship then, the Merchant furnish'd him with Goods, on his own Account; that for some Money, and some Spices of his own, which he brought with him, he went back to the *Manillas* to the *Spaniards*, where he sold his Cargo very well: Here having gotten a good Acquaintance at *Manilla*, he got his Ship made a free Ship; and the Governor of *Manilla* hired him, to go to *Accapulco*, in *America*, on the Coast of *Mexico*, and gave him a License to Land there, and travel to *Mexico*, and to pass in any *Spanish* Ship to *Europe*, with all his Men.

He made the Voyage to *Accapulco* very happily, and there he sold his Ship; and having there also obtained Allowance to travel by Land, to *Porto Bello*, he found Means some how or other, to get to *Jamaica*, with all his Treasure; and about eight Years after, came to *England* ex-

ceeding Rich; of the which, I shall take Notice in its Place; in the mean Time, I return to our particular Affairs.

Being now to part with the Ship, and Ship's Company; it came before us of Course, to consider what Recompence we should give to the two Men, that gave us such timely Notice of the Design against us in the River of *Cambodia*: The Truth was, they had done us a considerable Service, and deserv'd well at our Hands; tho' *by the Way*, they were a Couple of Rogues too; for as they believ'd the Story of our being Pirates, and that we had really run away with the Ship, they came down to us, not only to betray the Design that was form'd against us, but to go to Sea with us as Pirates; and one of them confess'd afterwards, that nothing else but the Hopes of going a Roguing brought him to do it; however, the Service they did us was not the less; and therefore, as I had promis'd to be grateful to them, I first order'd the Money to be pay'd to them, which they said was due to them on board their respective Ships; that is to say, the *English* Man nineteen Months Pay, and to the *Dutch* Man seven; and over and above that, I gave them, each of them, a small Sum of Money in Gold, and which contented them very well; then I made the *English* Man Gunner in the Ship, the Gunner being now made Second Mate, and Purser; the *Dutch* Man I made Boatswain; so they were both very well pleas'd, and prov'd very serviceable, being both able Seamen, and very stout Fellows.

We were now on Shore in *China*; if I thought myself banish'd, and remote from my own Country at *Bengale*, where I had many Ways to get home for my Money; what could I think of my self now? When I was gotten about a thousand Leagues farther off from home, and

perfectly destitute of all manner of Prospect of Return.

All we had for it was this, that in about four Months Time, there was to be another Fair at the Place where we were; and then we might be able to purchase all sorts of the Manufactures of the Country, and withal, might possibly find some *Chinese* Jonks or Vessels from *Tonquin*, that would be to be sold, and would carry us and our Goods, whither we pleas'd; this I lik'd very well, and resolv'd to wait; besides, as our particular Persons were not obnoxious, so if any *English* or *Dutch* Ships came thither, perhaps we might have an Opportunity to load our Goods, and get Passage to some other Place in *India*, nearer Home.

Upon these Hopes we resolv'd to continue here; but to divert our selves, we took two or three Journeys into the Country; first we went ten Days Journey to see the City of *Nanquin*, and a City well worth seeing indeed; they say it has a Million of People in it; which however, I do not believe. It is regularly built, the Streets all exactly strait, and cross one another, in direct Lines, which gives the Figure of it great Advantage.

But when I come to compare the miserable People of these Countries with ours, their Fabricks, their manner of Living, their Government, their Religion, their Wealth, and their Glory, (as some call it) I must confess, I do not so much as think it is worth naming, or worth my while to write of, or any that shall come after me to read.

It is very observable that we wonder at the Grandeur, the Riches, the Pomp, the Ceremonies, the Government, the Manufactures, the Commerce, and the Conduct of these People; not that it is to be wonder'd at, or indeed in the least to be regarded; but because, having first a

true Notion of the Barbarity of those Countries, the Rudeness and the Ignorance that prevails there, we do not expect to find any such Things so far off.

Otherwise, what are their Buildings to the Palaces and Royal Buildings of *Europe*? What their Trade, to the universal Commerce of *England*, *Holland*, *France* and *Spain*? What are their Cities to ours, for Wealth, Strength, Gaiety of Apparel, rich Furniture, and an infinite Variety? What are their Ports, supply'd with a few Jonks and Barks, to our Navigation, our Merchant Fleets, our large and powerful Navys? Our City of *London* has more Trade than all their mighty Empire: One *English*, or *Dutch*, or *French* Man of War of 80 Guns, would fight and destroy all the Shipping of *China*: But the Greatness of their Wealth, their Trade, the Power of their Government, and Strength of their Armies, is surprising to us, because, as I have said, considering them as a barbarous Nation of Pagans, little better than Savages, we did not expect such Things among them; and this indeed is the Advantage with which all their Greatness and Power is represented to us; otherwise it is in it self nothing at all; for as I have said of their Ships, so may be said of their Armies and Troops; all the Forces of their Empire, tho' they were to bring two Millions of Men into the Field together, would be able to do nothing but ruin the Country, and starve themselves: If they were to besiege a strong Town in *Flanders*, or to fight a disciplin'd Army, one Line of *German* Curiassiers, or of *French* Cavalry, would overthrow all the Horse of *China*; A Million of their Foot could not stand before one embattled Body of our Infantry, posted so as not to be surrounded, tho' they were to be not One to Twenty in Number; nay, I do not boast, if I say that 30000 *German* or *English* Foot, and 10000 *French* Horse,

would fairly beat all the Forces of *China*: And so of our fortified Towns, and of the Art of our Engineers in assaulting and defending Towns; there's not a fortified Town in *China*, could hold out one Month against the Batteries and Attacks of an *European* Army; and at the same time, all the Armies of *China* could never take such a Town as *Dunkirk*, provided it was not starv'd; no, not in a ten Years Siege. They have Fire-Arms, 'tis true, but they are awkward, clumsy, and uncertain in going off: They have Powder, but it is of no Strength: They have neither Discipline in the Field, Exercise to their Arms, Skill to attack, or Temper to Retreat; and therefore, I must confess, it seem'd strange to me, when I came home, and heard our People say such fine Things of the Power, Riches, Glory, Magnificence, and Trade of the *Chinese*; because I saw, and knew, that they were a contemptible Herd or Crowd of ignorant sordid Slaves, subjected to a Government qualified only to rule such a People; and in a word, for I am now launch'd quite beside my Design, I say, in a word, were not its Distance inconceivably great from *Muscovy*, and was not the *Muscovite* Empire almost as rude, impotent, and ill govern'd a Crowd of Slaves as they, the *Czar* of *Muscovy* might with much Ease drive them all out of their Country, and conquer them in one Campaign; and had the *Czar*, who I since hear is a growing Prince, and begins to appear formidable in the World, fallen this Way, instead of attacking the Warlike *Swedes*, in which Attempt none of the Powers of *Europe* would have envy'd or interrupted him; he might by this time have been Emperor of *China*, instead of being beaten by the King of *Sweden* at *Narva*, when the latter was not One to Six in Number. As their Strength and their Grandeur, so their Navigation, Commerce, and Husbandry, is

imperfect and impotent, compar'd to the same Things in *Europe*; also in their Knowledge, their Learning, their Skill in the Sciences; they have Globes and Spheres, and a Smatch of the Knowledge of the Mathematicks; but when you come to enquire into their Knowledge, how short-sighted are the wisest of their Students! they know nothing of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies; and so grossly absurdly ignorant, that when the Sun is eclips'd, they think 'tis a great Dragon has assaulted, and run away with it, and they fall a clattering with all the Drums and Kettles in the Country, to fright the Monster away, just as we do to hive a Swarm of Bees.

As this is the only Excursion of this kind which I have made in all the Account I have given of my Travels, so I shall make no more Descriptions of Countrys and People, 'tis none of my Business, or any part of my Design; but giving an Account of my own Adventures, through a Life of inimitable Wandrings, and a long Variety of Changes, which perhaps few that come after me will have heard the like of; I shall therefore say very little of all the mighty Places, desart Countrys, and numerous People, I have yet to pass thro' more than relates to my own Story, and which my Concern among them will make necessary. I was now, as near as I can compute, in the heart of *China*, about the Latitude of thirty Degrees North of the Line, for we were return'd from *Nanquin*; I had indeed a Mind to see the City of *Peking*, which I had heard so much of, and Father *Simon* importun'd me daily to do it; at length his Time of going away being set, and the other Missionary, who was to go with him, being arriv'd from *Macao*, it was necessary that we should resolve, either to go, or not to go; so I referr'd him to my Partner, and left it wholly to his Choice, who at length resolv'd it in the Affirmative,

and we prepar'd for our Journey. We set out with very good Advantage, as to finding the Way, for we got leave to travel in the Retinue of one of their Mandarins, a kind of Viceroy, or principal Magistrate in the Province where they reside, and who take great State upon them, travelling with great Attendance, and with great Homage from the People, who are sometimes greatly impoverish'd by them, because all the Countries they pass thro' are oblig'd to furnish Provisions for them and all their Attendance: That which I particularly observed, as to our travelling with his Baggage, was this, that tho' we receiv'd sufficient Provisions, both for our selves and our Horses, from the Country, as belonging to the Mandarin, yet we were oblig'd to pay for every thing we had, after the Market Price of the Country, and the Mandarin's Steward, or Commissary of the Provisions, collected it duly from us; so that our travelling in the Retinue of the Mandarin, tho' it was a very great Kindness to us, was not such a mighty Favour in him, but was indeed a great Advantage to him, considering there were above thirty other People travell'd in the same Manner besides us, under the Protection of his Retinue, or as we may call it, under his Convoy: This, I say, was a great Advantage to him, for the Country furnish'd all the Provisions for nothing, and he took all our Money for them.

We were five and twenty Days travelling to *Peking*, through a Country infinitely populous, but miserably cultivated; the Husbandry, the Oeconomy, and the Way of living miserable, tho' they boast so much of the Industry of the People; I say, miserable; and so it is, if we who understand how to live were to endure it, or to compare it with our own, but not so to these poor Wretches who know no other: The Pride of these People is infinitely

great, and exceeded by nothing, but their Poverty, which adds to that which I call their Misery; and I must needs think the naked Savages of *America* live much more happy, because, as they have nothing, so they desire nothing; whereas these are proud and insolent, and in the main are meer Beggars and Drudges; their Ostentation is inexpressible, and is chiefly shew'd in their Cloaths and Building, and in the keeping Multitudes of Servants or Slaves, and, which is to the last Degree ridiculous, their Contempt of all the World but themselves.

I must confess, I travell'd more pleasantly afterwards in the Desarts and vast Wildernesses of Grand *Tartary*, than here; and yet the Roads here are well pav'd, and well kept, and very convenient for Travellers; but nothing was more aukward to me, than to see such a haughty, imperious, insolent People, in the midst of the grossest Simplicity and Ignorance, for all their fam'd Ingenuity is no more: And my Friend Father *Simon* and I, us'd to be very merry upon these Occasions, to see the beggarly Pride of those People; for Example: Coming by the House of a Country Gentleman, as Father *Simon* call'd him, about ten Leagues off of the City of *Nanquin*, we had first of all the Honour to ride with the Master of the House about two Miles: The Stateherodein, was a perfect *Don Quixotism*, being a Mixture of Pomp and Poverty.

The Habit of this greasy Don was very proper for a Scaramouch or Merry-Andrew, being a dirty Callicoe, with all the Tawdry and Trapping of a Fool's-Coat, such as Hanging-sleeves, Tossels, and Cuts and Slashes almost on every Side; it cover'd a Taffety Vest, as greasy as a Butcher, and which testify'd that his Honour must needs be a most exquisite Sloven.

His Horse was a poor, lean, starv'd, hobbling Crea-

ture, such as in *England* might sell for about 30 or 40 Shillings, and he had two Slaves follow'd him on Foot, to drive the poor Creature along; he had a Whip in his Hand, and he belabour'd the Beast as fast about the Head, as his Slaves did about the Tail, and thus he rode by us with about ten or twelve Servants, and we were told he was going from the City to his Country Seat, about half a League before us: We travell'd on gently, but this Figure of a Gentleman rode away before us, and as we stopp'd at a Village about an Hour to refresh us, when we came by the Country Seat of this great Man, we saw him in a little Place, before his Door, eating his Repast. It was a kind of a Garden, but he was easy to be seen, and we were given to understand that the more we look'd on him, the better he would be pleas'd.

He sat under a Tree, something like the Palmetto Tree, which effectually shaded him over the Head, and on the South Side, but under the Tree also, was plac'd a large Umbrello, which made that Part look well enough; he sat lolling back in a great Elbow Chair, being a heavy corpulent Man, and his Meat being brought him by two Women Slaves; he had two more, whose Office, I think, few Gentlemen in *Europe* would accept of their Service in, (*viz.*) One fed the Squire with a Spoon, and the other held the Dish with one Hand, and scrap'd off what he let fall upon his Worship's Beard and Taffaty Vest, while the great fat Brute thought it below him to employ his own Hands in any of those familiar Offices, which Kings and Monarchs would rather do, than be troubled with the clumsy Fingers of their Servants.

I took this Time to think what Pain Mens Pride puts them to; and how troublesome a haughty Temper, thus ill-manag'd, must be to a Man of common Sense; and

leaving the poor Wretch to please himself with our looking at him, as if we admir'd his Pomp, whereas we really pity'd and contemn'd him, we persu'd our Journey; only Father *Simon* had the Curiosity to stay to inform himself what Dainties the Country Justice had to feed on, in all his State, which he said he had the Honour to taste of, and which was, I think, a Dose that an *English* Hound would scarce have eaten, if it had been offer'd him, (*viz.*) a Mess of boil'd Rice, with a great Piece of Garlick in it, and a little Bag fill'd with Green Pepper, and another Plant which they have there, something like our Ginger, but smelling like Musk, and tasting like Mustard; all this was put together, and a small Lump or Piece of lean Mutton boil'd in it; and this was his Worship's Repast, four or five Servants more attending at a Distance. If he fed them meaner than he was fed himself, the Spice excepted, they must fare very coarsely indeed.

As for our Mandarin, with whom we travell'd, he was respected like a King; surrounded always with his Gentlemen, and attended in all his Appearances with such Pomp, that I saw little of him but at a Distance; but this I observ'd, that there was not a Horse in his Retinue, but that our Carriers Pack-Horses in *England* seem to me to look much better, but they were so cover'd with Equipage, Mantles, Trappings and such like Trumpery, that you cannot see whether they are fat or lean; in a Word, we could see scarce any thing but their Feet and their Heads.

I was now light-hearted, and all my Trouble and Perplexity that I have given an Account of being over, I had no anxious Thoughts about me, which made this Journey the pleasanter to me, nor had I any ill Accident attended me, only in the passing or fording a small River, my Horse fell, and made me free of the Country, as they call

it, that is to say, threw me in; the Place was not deep, but it wetted me all over; I mention it because it spoil'd my Pocket-Book, wherein I had set down the Names of several People and Places which I had Occasion to remember, and which, not taking due Care of, the Leaves rotted, and the Words were never after to be read, to my great Loss, as to the Names of some Places I touch'd in this Voyage.

At length we arriv'd at *Peking*; I had no Body with me but the Youth, who my Nephew, the Captain, had given me to attend me as a Servant, and who proved very trusty and diligent; and my Partner had no Body with him but one Servant, who was a Kinsman: as for the *Portuguese* Pilot, he being desirous to see the Court, we gave him his Passage, that is to say, bore his Charges for his Company; and to use him as an Interpreter, for he understood the Language of the Country, and spoke good *French*, and a little *English*; and indeed, this old Man was a most useful Impliment to us every where; for we had not been above a Week at *Peking*, when he came laughing, *Ab, Seignior Inglese*, says he, *I have something to tell you will make your Heart glad. My Heart glad*, says I, *What can that be? I don't know anything in this Country can either give me Joy or Grief to any great degree. Yes, yes*, said the old Man in broken *English*, *make you glad, me sorrow; sorry* he would have said. This made me more inquisitive. *Why*, said I, *will it make you sorry? Because*, said he, *you have brought me here 25 days Journey, and will leave me to go back alone, and which way shall I get to my Port afterwards without a Ship, without a Horse, without Peccune?* So he called Money, being his broken *Latin*, of which he had abundance to make us merry with.

In short, he told us there was a great Caravan of *Muscovite* and *Polish* Merchants in the City, and they were

preparing to set out on their Journey by Land to *Muscovy* within four or five Weeks, and he was sure we would take the Opportunity to go with them, and leave him behind to go back all alone. I confess, I was surpris'd with his News, a secret Joy spread it self over my whole Soul, which I cannot describe, and never felt before or since, and I had no power for a good while to speak a Word to the old Man; but at last I turn'd to him; How do you know this, said I, are you sure it is true? Yes, says he, I met this Morning in the Street an old Acquaintance of mine, an *Armenian*, or one you call a *Grecian*, who is among them; he camelast from *Astracan*, and was designing to go to *Tonquin*, where I formerly knew him, but has alter'd his Mind, and is now resolv'd to go with the Caravan to *Muscow*, and so down the River *Wolga* to *Astracan*. Well, Segnior, says I, do not be uneasy about being left to go back alone, if this be a Method for my return to *England*, it shall be your Fault if you go back to *Macao* at all. We then went to consulting together what was to be done, and I ask'd my Partner what he thought of the Pilot's News, and whether it would suit with his Affairs? He told me he would do just as I would, for he had settled all his Affairs so well at *Bengale*, and left his Effects in such good Hands, that as we had made a good Voyage here, if he could vest it in *China* Silks, wrought and raw, such as might be worth the Carriage, he would be content to go to *England*, and then make his Voyage back to *Bengale*, by the Company's Ships.

Having resolv'd upon this, we agreed, that if our *Portugal* Pilot would go with us, we would bear his Charges to *Muscow*, or to *England* if he pleas'd; nor indeed were we to be esteem'd over generous in that Part neither, if we had not rewarded him farther, for the Service he had done

us was really worth all that, and more; for he had not only been a Pilot to us at Sea, but he had been like a Broker for us on Shore; and his procuring for us the *Japan* Merchant, was some hundreds of Pounds in our Pocket: So we consulted together about it, and being willing to gratify him, which was indeed but doing him Justice, and very willing also to have him with us besides, for he was a most necessary Man on all Occasions, we agreed to give him a Quantity of coin'd Gold, which, as I compute it, came to about 175 Pounds Sterling between us, and to bear all his Charges, both for himself and Horse, except only a Horse to carry his Goods.

Having settled this among our selves, we call'd him to let him know what we had resolv'd; I told him, he had complain'd of our being to let him go back alone, and I was now to tell him we was resolv'd he should not go back at all: that as we had resolv'd to go to *Europe* with the Caravan, we resolv'd also he should go with us, and that we call'd him, to know his Mind. He shook his Head, and said, it was a long Journey, and he had no *Pecune* to carry him thither, or to subsist himself when he came there. We told him, we believ'd it was so, and therefore we had resolv'd to do something for him, that should let him see how sensible we were of the Service he had done us, and also how agreeable he was to us; and then I told him what we had resolv'd to give him here, which he might lay out as we would do our own; and that as for his Charges, if he would go with us, we would set him safe a-shore, (Life and Casualties excepted) either in *Muscovy* or *England*, which he would, at our own Charge, except only the Carriage of his Goods.

He receiv'd the Proposal like a Man transported, and told us he would go with us over the whole World; and

so, in short, we all prepar'd our selves for the Journey: However, as it was with us, so it was with the other Merchants, they had many things to do, and instead of being ready in five Weeks, it was four Months and some odd Days, before all Things were got together.

It was the Beginning of *February*, our Stile, when we set out from *Peking*; my Partner and the old Pilot had gone express back to the Port where we had first put in, to dispose of some Goods which we had left there; and I with a *Chinese* Merchant, who I had some Knowledge of at *Nanquin*, and who came to *Peking* on his own Affairs, went to *Nanquin*, where I bought ninety Pieces of fine Damasks, with about two hundred Pieces of other very fine Silks, of several Sorts, some mix'd with Gold, and had all these brought to *Peking* against my Partner's Return; besides this, we bought a very large Quantity of Raw Silk, and some other Goods, our Cargo amounting in these Goods only to about three thousand five hundred Pounds Sterling, which, together with Tea and some fine Callicoes, and three Camels Loads of Nutmegs and Cloves, loaded in all eighteen Camels for our Share, besides those we rode upon; which with two or three spare Horses, and two Horses loaded with Provisions, made us in short 26 Camels and Horses in our Retinue.

The Company was very great, and, as near as I can remember, made between three and four hundred Horse, and upwards of a hundred and twenty Men, very well armed and provided for all Events: for as the Eastern Caravans are subject to be attacked by the *Arabs*, so are these by the *Tartars*; but they are not altogether so dangerous as the *Arabs*, nor so barbarous when they prevail.

The Company consisted of People of several Nations, such as *Muscovites* chiefly, for there were above Sixty of

them who were Merchants or Inhabitants of *Moscow*, tho' of them, some were *Livonians*, and to our particular Satisfaction, Five of them were *Scots*, who appeared also to be Men of great Experience in Business, and Men of very good Substance.

When we had travelled one Days Journey, the Guides, who were Five in Number, called all the Gentlemen and Merchants, that is to say, all the Passengers, except the Servants, to a great Council, as they called it: At this great Council every one deposited a certain Quantity of Money to a common Stock, for the necessary Expence of buying Forage on the Way, where it was not otherwise to be had, and for satisfying the Guides, getting Horses, and the like: And here they constituted the Journey, as they call it, (*viz.*) They named Captains and Officers, to draw us all up, and give the Command in case of an Attack, and gave every one their turn of Command: nor was this forming us into Order any more than what we found needful upon the Way, as shall be observed in its Place.

The Road all on this Side of the Country is very populous, and is full of Potters and Earth-makers, that is to say, People that tamper'd the Earth for the *China* Ware; and as I was coming along, our *Portugal* Pilot, who had always something or other to say to make us merry, came sneering to me, and told me he would show me the greatest Rarity in all the Country, and that I should have this to say of *China*, after all the ill-humour'd things I had said of it, that I had seen one thing which was not to be seen in all the World beside. I was very importunate to know what it was: At last he told me it was a Gentleman's House built all with *China* Ware. Well, says I, are not the Materials of their Building the Product of their own Country; and so it is all *China* Ware, is it not? No no, says

he, I mean it is a House all made of *China* Ware, such as you call it in *England*; or as it is call'd in our Country, *Porcelain*. Well, says I, such a thing may be; how big is it? Can we carry it in a Box upon a Camel? If we can, we will buy it. *Upon a Camel!* says the old Pilot, holding up both his Hands, *why there is a Family of Thirty People lives in it.*

I was then curious indeed to see it, and when I came to it, it was nothing but this; it was a Timber-House, or a House built, as we call it in *England*, with Lath and Plaister, but all the Plaistering was really *China* Ware, that is to say, it was plaister'd with the Earth that makes *China* Ware.

The Outside, which the Sun shone hot upon, was glazed, and look'd very well, perfect white, and painted with blue Figures, as the large *China* Ware in *England* is painted, and hard, as if it had been burnt: As to the Inside, all the Walls, instead of Wainscot, were lined up with harden'd and painted Tiles, like the little square Tiles we call Galley-Tiles in *England*, all made of the finest *China*, and the Figures exceeding fine indeed, with extraordinary Variety of Colours mix'd with Gold, many Tiles making but one Figure, but join'd so artificially, the Mortar being made of the same Earth, that it was very hard to see where the Tiles met: The Floors of the Rooms were of the same Composition, and as hard as the earthen Floors we have in use in several Parts of *England*, especially *Lincolnshire*, *Nottinghamshire*, *Leicestershire*, &c. as hard as Stone, and smooth, but not burnt and painted, except some smaller Rooms, like Closets, which were all as it were paved with the same Tile; the Cielings, and in a word, all the plaistering Work in the whole House were of the same Earth; and after all, the Roof was covered with Tiles of the same, but of a deep shining black.

This was a *China*-Warehouse indeed, truly and literally to be call'd so; and had I not been upon the Journey, I could have staid some Days to see and examine the Particulars of it: they told me there were Fountains and Fish-ponds in the Garden, all paved at the Bottom and Sides with the same, and fine Statues set up in Rows on the Walks, entirely form'd of the *Porcelain* Earth, and burnt whole.

As this is one of the Singularities of *China*, so they may be allow'd to excel in it; but I am very sure they excel in their Accounts of it; for they told me such incredible things of their Performance in *Crockery Ware*, for such it is, that I care not to relate, as knowing it could not be true; they told me in particular, of one Workman that made a Ship with all its Tackle, and Masts, and Sails, in Earthen Ware, big enough to carry fifty Men: If he had told me he launched it, and made a Voyage to *Japan* in it, I might have said something to it indeed; but as it was, I knew the whole of the Story, which was in short, asking Pardon for the Word, that the Fellow lyed; so I smiled, and said nothing to it.

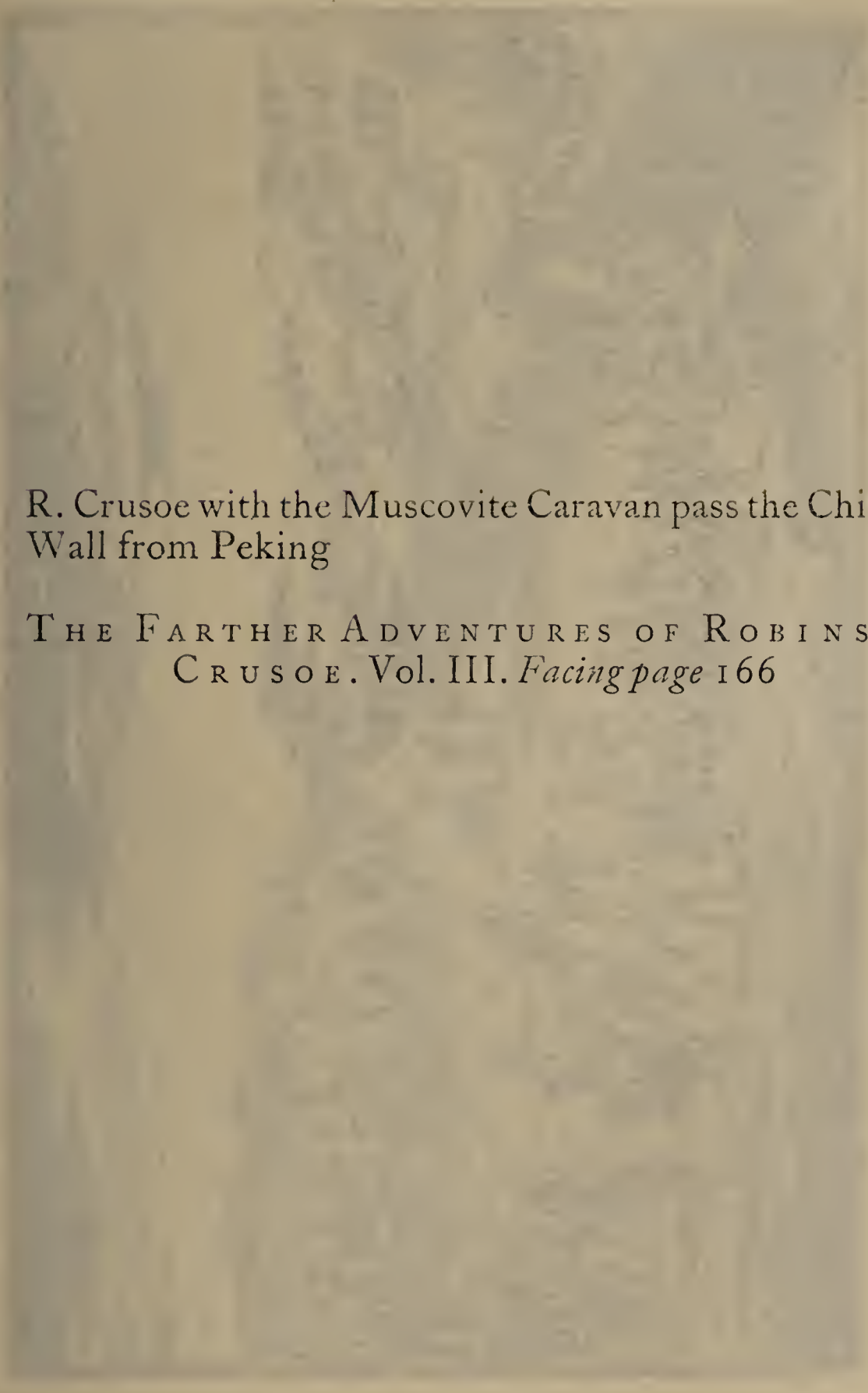
This odd Sight kept me two Hours behind the Caravan, for which, the Leader of it for the Day, fined me about the Value of three Shillings, and told me, if it had been three Days Journey without the Wall, as it was three Days within, he must have fined me four times as much, and made me ask Pardon the next Council Day; so I promised to be more orderly; for indeed I found afterward the Orders made for keeping all together, were absolutely necessary for our common Safety.

In two Days more, we pass'd the great *China* Wall, made for a Fortification against the *Tartars*; and a very great Work it is, going over Hills and Mountains in a

needless Track, where the Rocks are impassible, and the Precipices such as no Enemy could possibly enter, or indeed climb up, or where if they did, no Wall could hinder them: They tell us, its Length is near a thousand *English* Miles, but that the Country is five hundred in a strait measured Line, which the Wall bounds, without measuring the Windings and Turnings it takes; 'tis about four Fathom high, and as many thick in some Places.

I stood still an Hour or thereabout, without trespassing our Orders, *for so long the Caravan was in passing the Gate*; I say, I stood still an Hour to look at it on every Side, near, and far off, I mean, that was within my View; and the Guide of our Caravan, who had been extolling it for the Wonder of the World, was mighty eager to hear my Opinion of it; I told him it was a most excellent thing to keep off the *Tartars*; which he happen'd not to understand as I meant it, and so took it for a Compliment; but the old Pilot laugh'd: O Seignior *Inglese*, says he, you speak in Colours: In Colours, *said I*, what do you mean by that? Why, you speak what looks white *this way*, and black *that way*; gay *one way*, and dull *another way*; you tell him it is a good Wall to keep out *Tartars*; You tell me *by that*, it is good for nothing but to keep out *Tartars*, or it will keep out none but *Tartars*; I understand you, Seignior *Inglese*, I understand you, says he, but Seignior *Chinese* understood you his own way.

Well, says I, Seignior, do you think it would stand out an Army of our Country People, with a good Train of Artillery; or our Engineers, with two Companies of Miners; would not they batter it down in ten Days, that an Army might enter in Battalia, or blow it up in the Air, Foundation and all, that there should be no Sign of it left? Ay, ay,



R. Crusoe with the Muscovite Caravan pass the Chinese
Wall from Peking

THE FARTHER ADVENTURES OF ROBINSON
CRUSOE. Vol. III. *Facing page 166*





says he, I know that. The *Chinese* wanted mightily to know what I said, and I gave him Leave to tell him a few Days after, for we was then almost out of their Country, and he was to leave us in a little time afterward; but when he knew what I had said, he was dumb all the rest of the way, and we heard no more of his fine Story of the *Chinese* Power and Greatness, while he stay'd.

After we had pass'd this mighty *Nothing* call'd a Wall, something like the *Picts* Wall, and so famous in *Northumberland*, and built by the *Romans*, we began to find the Country thinly inhabited, and the People rather confined to live in fortified Towns and Cities, as being subject to the Inroads and Depredations of the *Tartars*, who rob in great Armies, and therefore are not to be resisted by the naked Inhabitants of an open Country.

And here I began to find the Necessity of keeping together in a Caravan as we travelled; for we saw several Troops of *Tartars* roving about; but when I came to see them distinctly, I wonder'd more that the *Chinese* Empire could be conquer'd by such contemptible Fellows; for they are a meer Hoord or Crowd of wild Fellows, keeping no Order, and understanding no Discipline, or manner of Fight.


Their Horses are poor lean starved Creatures, taught nothing, and fit for nothing; and this we said, the first Day we saw them, which was after we entered the wilder Part of the Country; our Leader for the Day, gave Leave for about sixteen of us to go a hunting, as they call it; and what was this, but hunting of Sheep; however, it may be call'd hunting too; for the Creatures are the wildest and swiftest of Foot that ever I saw of their Kind; only they will not run a great way, and you are sure of Sport when

you begin the Chace; for they appear generally thirty or forty in a Flock, and like true Sheep, always keep together when they fly.

In pursuit of this odd sort of Game, it was our hap to meet with about forty *Tartars*; whether they were hunting Mutton as we were, or whether they look'd for another Kind of Prey, I know not; but as soon as they saw us, one of them blew a kind of a Horn very loud, but with a barbarous Sound, that I had never heard before, and by the way, never care to hear again: we all suppos'd this was to call their Friends about them, and so it was; for in less than Half a Quarter of an Hour, a Troop of forty or fifty more appear'd, at about a Mile distance, but our Work was over first, as it happen'd.

One of the *Scots* Merchants of *Muscow*, happen'd to be amongst us, and as soon as he heard the Horn, he told us in short, that we had nothing to do, but to charge them immediately without loss of Time; and drawing us up in a Line, he ask'd if we were resolv'd? we told him we were ready to follow him; so he rode directly up to them: they stood gazing at us like a meer Crowd, drawn up in no Order, nor shewing the Face of any Order at all; but as soon as they saw us advance, they let fly their Arrows, which however miss'd us very happily; it seems they mistook not their Aim, but their Distance; for their Arrows all fell a little short of us, but with so true an Aim, that had we been about twenty Yards nearer, we must have had several Men wounded, if not kill'd.

Immediately we halted, and tho' it was at a great Distance, we fir'd, and sent them Leaden Bullets, for Wooden Arrows, following our Shot full Gallop, to fall in among them Sword in Hand, for so our bold *Scot* that led us directed: He was indeed but a Merchant, but he behav'd

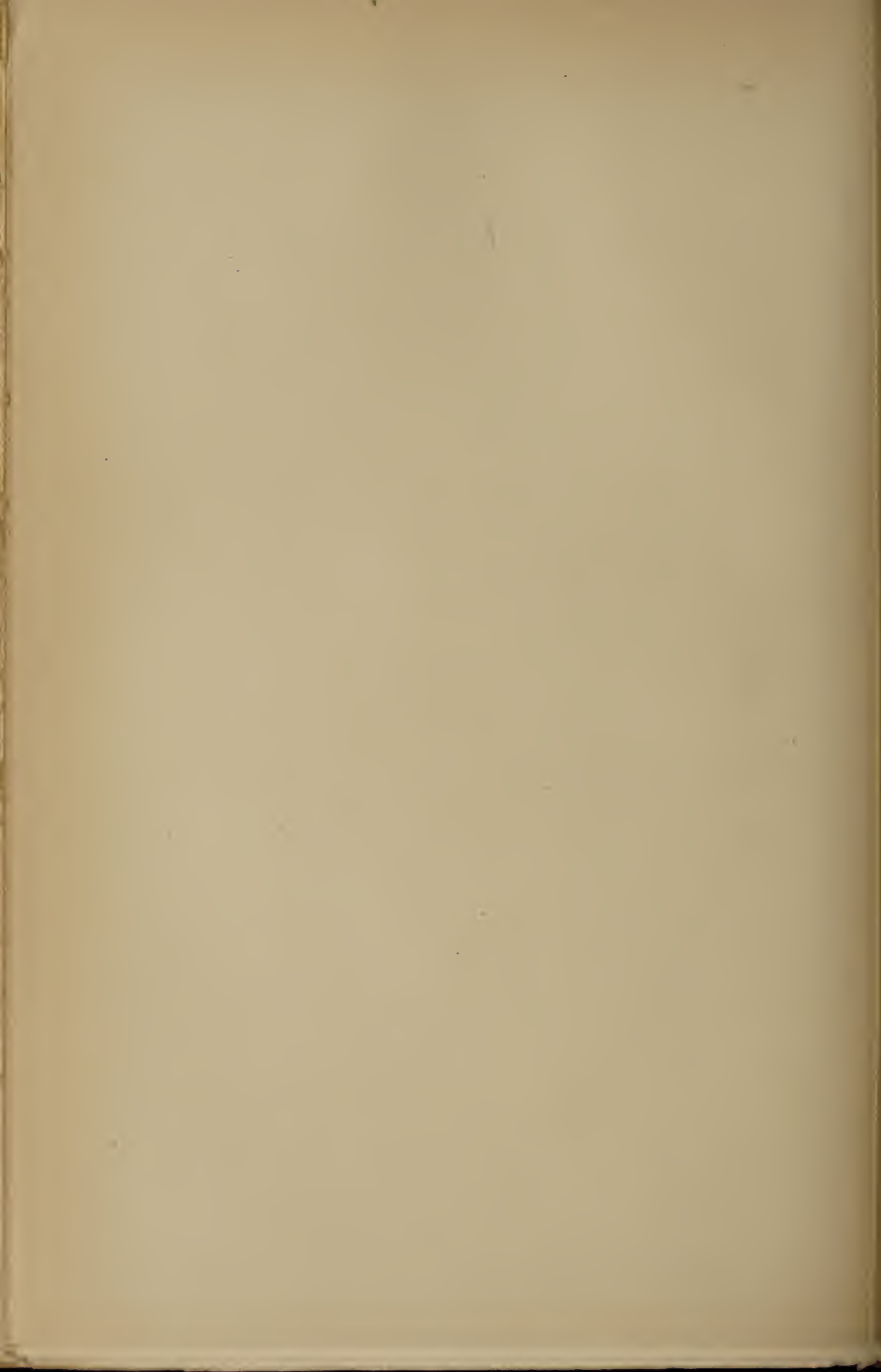


R. Crusoe with ye Muscovite Caravan passing ye Desarts
are attack'd by ye Tartars

THE FARTHER ADVENTURES OF ROBINSON
CRUSOE. Vol. III. *Facing page 168*







with that Vigour and Bravery on this occasion, and yet, with such a cool Courage too, that I never saw any Man in Action fitter for Command. As soon as we came up to them, we fir'd our Pistols in their Faces, and then drew, but they fled in the greatest Confusion imaginable; the only Stand any of them made, was on our Right, where three of them stood, and by Signs call'd the rest to come back to them, having a kind of Scymiter in their Hands, and their Bows hanging at their Backs. Our brave Commander, without asking any body to follow him, gallops up close to them, and with his Fuzee knocks one of them off his Horse, kill'd the second with his Pistol, and the third ran away, and thus ended our Fight; but we had this Misfortune attending it, (*viz.*) that all our Mutton that we had in chace, got away: We had not a Man kill'd or hurt; but as for the *Tartars*, there was about five of them kill'd; who were wounded, we knew not; but this we knew, that the other Party was so frightened with the Noise of our Guns, that they made off, and never made any attempt upon us.

We were all this while in the *Chinese* Dominion, and therefore the *Tartars* were not so bold as afterwards; but in about five Days we entr'd a vast great wild Desart, which held us three Days and Nights March; and we were oblig'd to carry our Water with us in great Leather Bottles, and to encamp all Night, just as I have heard they do in the Desart of *Arabia*.

I ask'd whose Dominion this was in, and they told me, this was a kind of Border, that might be called *no Man's Land*; being a Part of the Great *Karakathie*, or *Grand Tartary*, but that however it was all reckon'd to *China*; but that there was no Care taken here, to preserve it from the Inroads of Thieves, and therefore it was reckon'd the

worst Desart in the whole World; tho' we were to go over some much larger.

In passing this Wilderness, which I confess was at the first very frightful to me, we saw two or three times little Parties of the *Tartars*, but they seem'd to be upon their own Affairs, and to have no Design upon us; and so like the Man who met the Devil, if they had nothing to say to us, we had nothing to say to them; we let them go.

Once however, a Party of them came so near, as to stand and gaze at us; whether it was to consider what they should do, whether attack us, or not attack us, that we knew not; but when we were pass'd at some distance by them, we made a Rear-Guard of forty men, and stood ready for them, letting the Caravan pass half a Mile, or thereabouts, before us; but after a while they march'd off, only we found they saluted us with five Arrows at their parting; one of which wounded a Horse, so that it disabled him; and we left him the next Day, poor Creature, in great need of a good Farrier; we suppose they might shoot more Arrows, which might fall short of us, but we saw no more Arrows or *Tartars*, that time.

We travell'd near a Month after this, the Ways being not so good as at first, tho' still in the Dominions of the Emperor of *China*, but lay for the most part in Villages, some of which were fortified, because of the Incursions of the *Tartars*. When we came to one of these Towns, (it was about two Days and a Half Journey before we were to come to the City *Naum*) I wanted to buy a Camel, of which there are plenty to be sold all the way upon that Road, and of Horses also, such as they are, because so many Caravans coming that way, they are often wanted: The Person that I spoke to to get me a Camel, would have gone and fetch'd it for me, but I like a Fool must be offi-

cious, and go myself along with him: The Place was about two Miles out of the Village, where, it seems, they kept the Camels and Horses feeding under a Guard.

I walk'd it on Foot with my old Pilot, being very desirous, forsooth, of a little Variety: When we came to the Place, it was a low marshy Ground, wall'd round with a stone Wall, piled up dry, without Mortar or Earth among it, like a Park, with a little Guard of *Chinese* Soldiers at the Door. Having bought a Camel, and agreed for the Price, I came away, and the *Chinese* Man that went with me, led the Camel; when on a sudden came up five *Tartars* on Horseback; two of them seized the Fellow, and took the Camel from him, while other three step'd up to me; and my old Pilot, seeing us as it were unarm'd, for I had no Weapon about me but my Sword, which could but ill defend me against three Horse-men; the first that came up, stop'd short upon my drawing my Sword; (for they are errant Cowards) but a Second coming upon my Left, gave me a Blow on the Head, which I never felt till afterward, and wondered when I came to my self, what was the matter with me, and where I was, for he laid me flat on the Ground; but my never failing old Pilot, the *Portuguese* (so Providence unlooked for directs Deliverances from Dangers, which to us are unforeseen) had a Pistol in his Pocket, which I knew nothing of, nor the *Tartars* neither; if they had, I suppose they would not have attack'd us: But Cowards are always boldest when there is no Danger.

The old Man seeing me down, with a bold Heart step'd up to the Fellow that had struck me, and laying hold of his Arm with one Hand, and pulling him down by main Force a little towards him with the other, shot him into the Head, and laid him dead upon the Spot; he

then immediately step'd up to him who had stop'd us, as I said, and before he could come forward again, (for it was all done as it were in a moment) made a Blow at him with a Scymeter which he always wore, but missing the Man, cut his Horse into the Side of his Head, cut one of his Ears off by the Root, and a great Slice down the Side of his Face; the poor Beast enraged with the Wound, was no more to be governed by his Rider, tho' the Fellow sat well enough too; but away he flew, and carried him quite out of the Pilot's Reach, and at some Distance rising up upon his hind Legs, threw down the *Tartar*, and fell upon him.

In this Interval the poor *Chinese* came in, who had lost the Camel, but he had no Weapon; however, seeing the *Tartar* down, and his Horse fallen upon him, away he runs to him, and seizing upon an ugly ill-favour'd Weapon he had by his Side, something like a Pole-ax, but not a Pole-ax neither, he wrench'd it from him, and made shift to knock his *Tartarian* Brains out with it. But my old Man had the third *Tartar* to deal with still, and seeing he did not fly, as he expected, nor come on to fight him, as he apprehended, but stand stock still, the old Man stood still too, and falls to work with his Tackle to charge his Pistol again; but as soon as the *Tartar* saw the Pistol, whether he supposed it to be the same, or another, I know not, but away he scowered, and left my Pilot, my Champion I call'd him afterward, a compleat Victory.

By this time I was a little awake, for I thought when first I began to wake, that I had been in a sweet Sleep; but as I said above, I wondered where I was, how I came upon the Ground, and what was the matter: In a word, a few moments after, as Sense returned, I felt Pain, tho' I did not know where; I clap'd my Hand to my Head, and

took it away bloody; then I felt my Head ach, and then in another Moment, Memory returned, and every thing was present to me again.

I jump'd up upon my Feet instantly, and got hold of my Sword, but no Enemies in View: I found a *Tartar* lie dead and his Horse standing very quietly by him; and looking farther, I saw my Champion and Deliverer, who had been to see what the *Chinese* had done, coming back with his Hanger in his Hand; the old Man seeing me on my Feet, came running to me and embraced me with a great deal of Joy, being afraid before that I had been killed, and seeing me bloody, would see how I was hurt, but it was not much, only what we call a broken Head; neither did I afterwards find any great Inconvenience from the Blow, other than the Place which was hurt; and which was well again in two or three Days.

We made no great Gain however by this Victory, for we lost a Camel, and gained a Horse; but that which was remarkable, when we came back to the Village, the Man demanded to be paid for the Camel; I disputed it, and it was brought to a hearing before the *Chinese* Judge of the Place; that is to say, in *English*, we went before a Justice of the Peace: Give him his due, he acted with a great deal of Prudence and Impartiality; and having heard both Sides, he gravely ask'd the *Chinese* Man, that went with me to buy the Camel, whose Servant he was? I am no Servant, says he, but went with the Stranger. At whose Request, says the Justice? At the Stranger's Request, says he. Why then, says the Justice, you were the Stranger's Servant for the Time, and the Camel being deliver'd to his Servant, it was delivered to him, and he must pay for it.

I confess the Thing was so clear, that I had not a Word

to say; but admiring to see such just Reasoning upon the Consequence, and so accurate stating the cause, I pay'd willingly for the Camel, and sent for another; but you may observe, I sent for it, I did not go to fetch it my self any more; I had enough of that.

The City of *Naum* is a Frontier of the *Chinese* Empire; they call it fortified, and so it is, as Fortifications go there; for this I will venture to affirm, that all the *Tartars* in *Karakathaie*, which I believe, are some Millions, could not batter down the Walls with their Bows and Arrows; but to call it strong, if it were attacked with Cannon, would be to make those who understand it, laugh at you.

We wanted, as I have said, above two Days Journey of this City, when Messengers were sent Express to every Part of the Road, to tell all Travellers and Caravans, to halt till they had a Guard sent for them; for that an unusual Body of *Tartars*, making ten thousand in all, had appeared in the Way, about thirty Miles beyond the City.

This was very bad News to Travellers; however, it was carefully done of the Governour, and we were very glad to hear we should have a Guard; accordingly, two Days after, we had two hundred Soldiers sent us from a Garrison of the *Chinese*s, on our left, and three hundred more from the City of *Naum*, and with those we advanced boldly; the three hundred Soldiers from *Naum*, march'd in our Front, the two hundred in our Rear, and our Men on each Side of our Camels with our Baggage, and the whole Caravan in the Center; in this Order, and well prepared for Battle, we thought our selves a Match for the whole ten thousand *Mongol Tartars*, if they had appeared; but the next day when they did appear, it was quite another thing.

It was early in the Morning, when marching from a

little well situated Town call'd *Changu*, we had a River to pass, where we were obliged to ferry; and had the *Tartars* had any Intelligence, then had been the Time to have attack'd us, when the Caravan being over, the Rear-Guard was behind; but they did not appear.

About three Hours after, when we were enter'd upon a Desart of about fifteen or sixteen Miles over, behold, by a Cloud of Dust they rais'd, we saw an Enemy was at Hand, and they were at Hand indeed, for they came on upon the Spur.

The *Chineses*, our Guard on the Front, who had talk'd so big the Day before, began to stagger, and the Soldiers frequently look'd behind them, which is a certain Sign in a Soldier, that he is just ready to run away; my old Pilot was of my mind, and being near me, he call'd out, *Seignior Inglese*, says he, those Fellows must be encourag'd, or they will ruin us all; for if the *Tartars* come on, they will never stand it: I am of your Mind, *said I*, but what Course must be done? *Done! says he*, let fifty of our Men advance, and flank them on each Wing, and encourage them, and they will fight like brave Fellows in brave Company; but without, they will every man turn his back; immediately I rode up to our Leader, and told him, who was exactly of our mind; and accordingly, fifty of us march'd to the right Wing, and fifty to the left, and the rest made a Line of Rescue; and so we march'd, leaving the last two hundred Men to make another Body by themselves, and to guard the Camels; only that if need were, they should send a hundred Men, to assist the last fifty.

In a Word, the *Tartars* came on, and an innumerable Company they were; how many, we could not tell, but ten thousand we thought was the least: A Party of them came on first, and view'd our Posture, traversing the

Ground in the Front of our Line; and as we found them within Gun-shot, our Leader ordered the two Wings to advance swiftly, and give them a Salvo on each Wing with their Shot, which was done; but they went off, and I suppose back to give an Account of the Reception they were like to meet with: and indeed that Salute clogg'd their Stomach, for they immediately halted, stood a while to consider of it, and wheeling off to the left, they gave over the Design, and said no more to us for that time; which was very agreeable to our Circumstances, which were but very indifferent for a Battle with such a Number.

Two Days after this, we came to the City *Naun*, or *Naum*; we thank'd the Governour for his Care for us, and collected to the Value of a hundred Crowns, or thereabouts, which we gave to the Soldiers sent to guard us; and here we rested one Day. This is a Garrison indeed, and there were nine hundred Soldiers kept here; but the Reason of it was, that formerly the *Muscovite* Frontiers lay nearer to them than they do now, the *Muscovites* having abandon'd that Part of the Country (which lies from this City West, for about two hundred Miles) as desolate and unfit for Use; and more especially, being so very remote, and so difficult to send Troops thither for its Defence; for we had yet above two thousand Miles to *Muscovy*, properly so call'd.

After this, we pass'd several great Rivers, and two dreadful Desarts, one of which we were sixteen Days passing over, and which, as I said, was to be call'd *no Man's Land*; and on the 13th of *April* we came to the Frontiers of the *Muscovite* Dominions: I think the first City, or Town, or Fortress, whatever it might be call'd, that belong'd to the Czar of *Muscovy*, was call'd *Argun*, being on the West Side of the River *Argun*.

I could not but discover an infinite Satisfaction, that I was so soon arrived in, as I call'd it, a Christian Country, or at least in a Country governed by Christians; for tho' the *Muscovites* do, *in my Opinion*, but just deserve the Name of Christians, yet such they pretend to be, and are very devout in their Way: It would certainly occur to any Man who travels the World as I have done, and who had any Power of Reflection; I say, it would occur to him, to reflect what a Blessing it is to be brought into the World, where the Name of God, and of a Redeemer is known, worship'd and ador'd; and not where the People given up by Heaven to strong Delusions, worship the Devil, and prostrate themselves to Stocks and Stones, worship Monsters, Elements, horrible shaped Animals, and Statues, or Images of Monsters: not a Town or City we pass'd thro', but had their Pagods, their Idols, and their Temples, and ignorant People worshipping, even the Works of their own Hands.

Now we came where at least a Face of the Christian Worship appear'd, where the Knee was bow'd to Jesus; and whether ignorantly or not, yet the Christian Religion was own'd, and the Name of the true God was call'd upon, and adored; and it made the very Recesses of my Soul rejoice to see it: I saluted the brave *Scots* Merchant I mentioned above, with my first acknowledgement of this; and taking him by the Hand, I said to him, Blessed be God, we are once again come among Christians: He smiled, and answered, do not rejoice too soon Countryman, these *Muscovites* are but an odd sort of Christians; and but for the Name of it, you may see very little of the Substance, for some Months farther of our Journey.

Well, says I, but still 'tis better than Paganism, and worshipping of Devils. Why, I'll tell you, says he, except

the *Russian* Soldiers in Garrisons, and a few of the Inhabitants of the Cities upon the Road, all the rest of this Country, for above a thousand Miles farther, is inhabited by the worst, and most ignorant of Pagans; and so indeed we found it.

We were now launch'd into the greatest Piece of solid Earth, if I understand any thing of the Surface of the Globe, that is to be found in any Part of the Earth; we had at least twelve hundred Miles to the Sea, Eastward; we had at least two thousand to the Bottom of the Baltick Sea, Westward; and above three thousand Miles, if we left that Sea, and went on West to the *British* and *French* Channels: We had full five thousand Miles to the *Indian*, or *Persian* Sea, South; and about eight hundred Miles to the Frozen Sea, North; nay, if some People may be believed, there might be no Sea North-East, till we came round the Pole, and consequently into the North-West, and so had a Continent of Land into *America*, the Lord knows where, tho' I could give some Reasons, why I believe that to be a Mistake.

As we enter'd into the *Muscovite* Dominions, a good while before we come to any considerable Towns, we had nothing to observe there but this; first, that all the Rivers that run to the East, as I understood by the Charts, which some in our Caravan had with them; it was plain, all those Rivers ran into the Great River *Yamour*, or *Gammour*: This River, by the natural Course of it must run into the East Sea, or *Chinese* Ocean. The Story they tell us, that the Mouth of this River, is choak'd up with Bullrushes, of a monstrous Growth, (*viz.*) three Foot about, and twenty or thirty Foot high, I must be allow'd to say, I believe nothing of; but as its Navigation is of no Use, because there is no Trade that way, the *Tartars*, to whom

alone it belongs, dealing in nothing but Cattle, so no Body that ever I heard of, has been curious enough, either to go down to the Mouth of it in Boats, or come up from the Mouth of it in Ships; but this is certain, that this River running due East, in the Latitude of [60 degrees,] carries a vast Concourse of Rivers along with it, and finds an Ocean to empty it self in that Latitude; so we are sure of Sea there.

Some Leagues to the North of this River, there are several considerable Rivers, whose Streams run as due North as the *Yamour* runs East, and these are all found to join their Waters with the Great River *Tartarus*, nam'd so, from the northernmost Nations of the *Mongul Tartars*, who the *Chinese* say, were the first *Tartars* in the World; and who, as our Geographers alledge, are the *Gog* and *Magog*, mention'd in sacred Story.

These Rivers running all Northward, as well as all the other Rivers, I am yet to speak of, make it evident, that the Northern Ocean bounds the Land also on that side; so that it does not seem rational in the least to think, that the Land can extend it self to join with *America* on that side, or that there is not a Communication between the Northern and the Eastern Ocean; but of this I shall say no more, it was my Observation at that time, and therefore I take Notice of it in this Place. We now advanc'd from the River *Arguna* by easy and moderate Journeys, and were very visibly oblig'd to the Care the Czar of *Muscovy* has taken to have Cities and Towns built in as many Places as are possible to place them, where his Soldiers keep Garrison something like the Stationary Soldiers plac'd by the *Romans* in the remotest Countries of their Empire, some of which I had read particularly were plac'd in *Britain* for the Security of Commerce, and for the

lodging Travellers; and thus it was here; for where-ever we came, tho' at these Towns and Stations, the Garrisons and Governor were *Russians*, and profess'd Christians, yet the Inhabitants of the Country were meer *Pagans*, sacrificing to Idols, and worshipping the Sun, Moon, and Stars, or all the Host of Heaven, and not only so, but were of all the *Heathens* and *Pagans* that ever I met with, the most barbarous, except only that they did not eat Man's Flesh, as our Savages of *America* did.

Some Instances of this we met with in the Country between *Arguna*, where we enter the *Muscovite* Dominions, and a City of *Tartars* and *Russians* together, call'd *Nortziuskoy*, in which is a continu'd Desart or Forest, which cost us twenty Days to travel over it: in a Village near the last of those Places I had the Curiosity to go and see their Way of Living, which is most brutish and unsufferable; they had I suppose a great Sacrifice that Day, for there stood out upon an old Stump of a Tree, an Idol made of Wood, frightful as the Devil, at least as any Thing we can think of to represent the Devil, can be made; it had a Head certainly not so much as resembling any Creature that the World ever saw; Ears as big as Goats Horns, and as high; Eyes as big as a Crown-Piece; a Nose like a crooked Ram's Horn, and a Mouth extended four corner'd, like that of a Lion, with horrible Teeth, hooked like a Parrot's under Bill; it was dressed up in the filthiest manner that you could suppose; its upper Garment was of Sheep-Skins, with the Wool outward, a great *Tartar* Bonnet on the Head, with two Horns growing through it; it was about eight Foot high, yet had no Feet or Legs, or any other Proportion of Parts.

This Scare-crow was set up at the outer Side of the Village, and when I came near to it, there was sixteen or

seventeen Creatures, whether Men or Women, I could not tell, for they make no Distinction by their Habits, either of Body or Head: These lay all flat on the Ground, round this formidable Block of shapeless Wood: I saw no Motion among them any more, than if they had been all Logs of Wood like the Idol, and at first, really thought they had been so; but when I came a little nearer, they started up upon their Feet, and rais'd a howling Cry, as if it had been so many deep-mouth'd Hounds, and walk'd away as if they were displeas'd at our disturbing them: A little way off from this Monster, and at the Door of that Tent or Hutt, made all of Sheep-Skins and Cow-Skins, dry'd, stood three Butchers, I thought they were such; when I came nearer to them, I found they had long Knives in their Hands, and in the middle of the Tent appear'd three Sheep kill'd, and one young Bullock or Steer: These it seems, were Sacrifices to that sensless Log of an Idol, and these three Men, Priests belonging to it; and the seventeen prostrated Wretches, were the People who brought the Offering, and were making their Prayers to that Stock.

I confess I was more mov'd at their Stupidity and brutish Worship of a Hobgoblin, than ever I was at any Thing in my Life; to see God's most glorious and best Creature, to whom he had granted so many Advantages, *even by Creation*, above the rest of the Works of his Hands, vested with a reasonable Soul, and that Soul adorn'd with Faculties and Capacities, adapted both to honour his Maker, and be honoured by him, sunk and degenerated to a Degree so more than stupid, as to prostrate it self to a frightful Nothing, a meer imaginary Object dress'd up by themselves, and made terrible to themselves by their own Contrivance; adorn'd only with Clouts and Rags; and

that this should be the Effect of meer Ignorance, wrought up into hellish Devotion by the Devil himself; who envying (to his Maker) the Homage and Adoration of his Creatures, had deluded them into such gross, surfeiting, sordid and brutish things, as one would think should shock Nature it self.

But what signify'd all the Astonishment and Reflection of Thoughts; thus it was, and I saw it before my Eyes, and there was no room to wonder at it, or think it impossible; all my Admiration turn'd to Rage, and I rid up to the Image, or Monster, call it what you will, and with my Sword cut the Bonnet that was on its Head in two in the middle, so that it hung down by one of the Horns; and one of our Men that was with me took hold of the Sheep-Skin that cover'd it, and pull'd at it, when behold a most hideous Outcry and Howling run thro' the Village, and two or three hundred People came about my Ears, so that I was glad to scour for it; for we saw some had Bows and Arrows; but I resolved from that moment to visit them again.

Our Caravan rested three Nights at the Town, which was about four Miles off, in order to provide some Horses which they wanted, several of the Horses having been lam'd, and jaded with the badness of the Way and long March over the last Desart; so we had some Leisure here to put my Design in Execution: I communicated my Project to the *Scots* Merchant of *Muscow*, of whose Courage I had had sufficient Testimony, as above: I told him what I had seen, and with what Indignation I had since thought that human Nature could be so degenerate: I told him, I was resolv'd if I could get but four or five Men well arm'd to go with me, I was resolv'd to go and destroy that vile, abominable Idol, and let them see that it had no

Power to help it self, and consequently could not be an Object of Worship, or to be pray'd to, much less help them that offer'd Sacrifices to it.

He laugh'd at me; *says he*, Your Zeal may be good, but what do you propose to yourself by it? Propose, *said I*, to vindicate the Honour of God, which is insulted by this Devil Worship. But how will it vindicate the Honour of God, *said he*? While the People will not be able to know what you mean by it, unless you could speak to them and tell them so, and then they will fight you, and beat you too, I'll assure you, for they are desperate Fellows, and that especially in Defence of their Idolatry. Can we not, *said I*, do it in the Night, and then leave them the Reasons and Causes in Writing in their own Language? Writing! *said he*, why there is not a Man in five Nations of them that know any thing of a Letter, or how to read a Word in any Language, or in their own. Wretched Ignorance! *said I* to him; however I have a great mind to do it; perhaps Nature may draw Inferences from it to them, to let them see how brutish they are, to worship such horrid Things. Look you, Sir, *said he*, if your Zeal prompts you to it so warmly, you must do it; but in the next place I would have you consider, these wild Nations of People are subjected by Force to the Czar of *Muscovy's* Dominions, and if you do this, 'tis ten to one but they will come by Thousands to the Governour of *Nertsinskay*, and complain, and demand Satisfaction; and if he cannot give them Satisfaction, 'tis ten to one but they revolt, and it will occasion a new War with all the *Tartars* in the Country.

This, I confess, put new Thoughts into my Head for a while; but I harp'd upon the same String still, and all that Day I was uneasy to put my Project in Execution: To-

wards the Evening the *Scots* Merchant met me by Accident in our Walk about the Town, and desir'd to speak with me; I believe, said he, I have put you off of your good Design; I have been a little concern'd about it since, for I abhor the Idol and the Idolatry as much as you can do: Truly, *says I*, you have put it off a little as to the Execution of it, but you have not put it all out of my Thoughts, and I believe I shall do it still before I quit this Place, tho' I were to be deliver'd up to them for Satisfaction. No, no, *says he*, God forbid they should deliver you up to such a Crew of Monsters; they shall not do that neither, that would be murdering you indeed. Why, *says I*, how would they use me? Use you! *says he*; I'll tell you how they serv'd a poor *Russian*, who affronted them in their Worship just as you did, and who they took Prisoner; after they had lam'd him with an Arrow that he could not run away, they took him and stripp'd him stark naked, and set him up on the top of the Idol Monster, and stood all round him, and shot as many Arrows into him as would stick over his whole Body, and then they burnt him and all the arrows sticking in him as a Sacrifice to the Idol. And was this the same Idol? Yes, *says he*, the very same. Well, *says I*, I'll tell you a Story; so I related the Story of our Men at *Madagascar*, and how they burnt and sack'd the Village there, and kill'd Man, Woman and Child, for their murdering one of our Men, just as it is related before; and when I had done, I added, that I thought we ought to do so to this Village.

He listen'd very attentively to the Story; but when I talk'd of doing so to that Village, *says he*, You mistake very much, it was not this Village, it was almost a hundred Mile from this place, but it was the same Idol, for they carry him about in Procession all over the Country:

Well, then, says I, then that Idol ought to be punish'd for it, and it shall, says I, if I live this Night out.

In a word, finding me resolute, he lik'd the Design, and told me I should not go alone, but he would go with me, and bring a stout Fellow, one of his Countrymen, to go also with us; and one, says he, as famous for his Zeal as you can desire any one to be, against such Devilish things as these. In a word, he brought me his Comrade, a *Scots* Man, who he call'd Captain *Richardson*, and I gave him a full account of what I had seen; and in a word, of what I intended; and he told me readily, he would go with me if it cost him his Life; so we agreed to go only us three. I had indeed propos'd it to my Partner, but he declin'd it; he said, he was ready to assist me to the utmost, and upon all occasions for my defence; but that this was an Adventure quite out of his way; so, I say, we resolv'd upon our Work only us three and my Man-Servant, and to put it in Execution that Night about Midnight, with all the Secrecy imaginable.

However, upon second Thoughts, we were willing to delay it till the next Night, because the Caravan being to set forward in the Morning, we suppos'd the Governour could not pretend to give them any Satisfaction upon us when we were out of his Power. The *Scots* Merchant, as steady in his Resolution for the Enterprize, as bold in executing, brought me a *Tartar's* Robe or Gown of the Sheep-Skins, and a Bonnet, with a Bow and Arrows, and had provided the same for himself and his Countryman, that the People, if they saw us, should not be able to determine who we were.

All the first Night we spent in mixing up some combustible Matter with Aqua-vitæ, Gun-powder, and such other Materials as we could get; and having a good Quan-

tity of Tar in a little Pot, about an Hour after Night we set out upon our Expedition.

We came to the Place about eleven a Clock at Night, and found that the People had not the least Jealousy of Danger attending their Idol; the Night was cloudy, yet the Moon gave us Light enough to see that the Idol stood just in the same Posture and Place that it did before: The People seemed to be all at their Rest, only, that in the great Hutt, or Tent, as we called it, where we saw the three Priests, who we mistook for Butchers, we saw a Light, and going up close to the Door, we heard People talking, as if there were five or six of them; we concluded therefore, that if we set the Wild-fire to the Idol, these Men would come out immediately, and run up to the Place to rescue it from the Destruction that we intended for it, and what to do with them we knew not; once we thought of carrying it away, and setting Fire to it at a Distance; but when we came to handle it, we found it too bulky for our Carriage, so we were at a Loss again: The second *Scots* Man was for setting Fire to the Tent or Hutt, and knocking the Creatures that were there on the Head when they came out; but I could not joyn with that; I was against killing them, if it was possible to be avoided: Well, then said the *Scots* Merchant, I'll tell you what we will do, we will try to take them Prisoners, tye their Hands behind them, and make them stand still, and see their Idol destroy'd.

As it happen'd, we had Twine or Packthread enough about us, which was used to tye our Fire-Works together with; so we resolv'd to attack these People first, and with as little Noise as we could: The first Thing we did, we knocked at the Door, which issued just as we desired it; for one of their Idol Priests came to the Door: we imme-

diately seized upon him, stop'd his Mouth, and ty'd his Hands behind him, and led him to the Idol, where we gagg'd him, that he might not make a Noise; ty'd his Feet also together, and left him on the Ground.

Two of us then waited at the Door, expecting that another would come out to see what the Matter was; but we waited so long 'till the third Man came back to us; and then no Body coming out, we knock'd again gently, and immediately out came two more, and we served them just in the same Manner, but was oblig'd to go all with them, and lay them down by the Idol some Distance from one another; when going back, we found two more were come out to the Door, and a third stood behind them within the Door: We seiz'd the two, and immediately ty'd them, when the third stepping back, and crying out, my *Scots* Merchant went in after him, and taking out a Composition we had made, that would only smoke and stink, he set Fire to it, and threw it in among them; by that Time the other *Scots* Man and my Man taking Charge of the two Men who were already bound, and ty'd together also by the Arm, led them away to the Idol, and left them there, to see if their Idol would relieve them, making Haste back to us.

When the Fuze we had thrown in had fill'd the Hutt with so much Smoak, that they were almost suffocated, we then threw in a small Leather Bag of another kind, which flam'd like a Candle, and following it in, we found there was but four People left, who, it seems, were two Men and two Women, and, as we supposed, had been about some of their Diabolick Sacrifices: They appear'd, in short, frighted to Death, at least so as to sit trembling and stupid, and not able to speak neither, for the Smoak.

In a word, we took them, bound them as we had the

other, and all without any Noise: I should have said, we brought them out of the House or Hutt first; for indeed we were not able to bear the Smoak any more than they were. When we had done this, we carry'd them all together to the Idol: when we came there, we fell to work with him; and first we daub'd him all over, and his Robes also, with Tar and such other Stuff as we had, which was Tallow mix'd with Brimstone; then we stopp'd his Eyes, and Ears, and Mouth full of Gun-Powder, and then we wrapp'd up a great Piece of Wild-fire in his Bonnet, and then sticking all the Combustibles we had brought with us upon him, we look'd about to see if we could find any thing else to help to burn him, when my Man remembered, that by the Tent or Hutt where the Men were, there lay a heap of dry Forage, whether Straw or Rushes I do not remember; away he and one of the *Scots* Men run, and fetch'd their Arms full of that: When we had done this, we took all our Prisoners, and brought them, having untied their Feet, and ungagg'd their Mouths, and made them stand up, and set them just before their monstrous Idol, and there set fire to the whole.

We stay'd by it a quarter of an Hour, or thereabouts, 'till the Powder in the Eyes, and Mouth, and Ears of the Idol blew up, and we could perceive had split and deformed the Shape; and in a word, 'till we saw it burn into a meer Block or Log of Wood, and then setting the dry Forage to it, we found it would be quite consum'd, when we began to think of going away; but the *Scots* Man said no, we must not go, for these poor deluded Wretches will all throw themselves into the Fire, and burn themselves with the Idol; so we resolved to stay 'till the Forage was burnt down too, and then we came away and left them.

In the Morning we appear'd among our Fellow Tra-

vellers exceeding busy, in getting ready for our Journey; nor could any Man suggest that we had been any where but in our Beds, as Travellers might be suppos'd to be, to fit themselves for the Fatigues of that Day's Journey.

But it did not end so; the next Day came a great Multitude of the Country People, not only of this Village, but of a hundred more, for ought I know, to the Town-Gates, and in a most outrageous Manner, demanded Satisfaction of the *Russian* Governour, for the insulting their Priests, and burning their great *Cham-Chi-Thaungu*, such a hard Name they gave the monstrous Creature they worship'd; the People of *Nertsinskay*, were at first in a great Consternation, for they said, the *Tartars* were no less than thirty thousand, and that in a few Days more, would be one hundred thousand strong.

The *Russian* Governour sent out Messengers to appease them, and gave them all the good words imaginable: He assured them, he knew nothing of it, and that there had not a Soul of his Garrison been abroad: that it could not be from any body there; and if they would let him know who it was, they should be exemplarily punished. They return'd haughtily, that all the Country revered the Great *Cham-Chi-Thaungu*, who dwelt in the Sun, and no Mortal would have decreed to offer Violence to his Image, but some Christian Miscreant, so they call'd them it seems; and they therefore denounc'd War against him, and all the *Russians*, who, they said, were Miscreants and Christians.

The Governour still patient, and unwilling to make a Breach, or to have any Cause of War alledged to be given by him, the Czar having straitly charged them to treat the conquer'd Country with Gentleness and Civility, gave them still all the good Words he could; at last he told

them, there was a *Caravan* gone towards *Russia* that Morning, and perhaps it was some of them, who had done them this Injury; and that if they would be satisfied with that, he would send after them, to enquire into it: This seem'd to appease them a little; and accordingly the Governour sent after us, and gave us a particular Account how the Thing was; intimating withal, that if any in our Caravan had done it, they should make their Escape; but that whether they had done it or no, we should make all the Haste forward that was possible; and that in the mean time, he would keep them in Play as long as he could.

This was very friendly in the Governour; however, when it came to the Caravan, there was no Body knew any Thing of the Matter; and as for us that were guilty, we were the least of all suspected; none so much as ask'd us the Question; however, the Captain of the Caravan for the Time, took the Hint that the Governour gave us, and we marched or travelled two Days and two Nights, without any considerable Stop; and then we lay at a Village called *Plotbus*; nor did make any long Stop here, but hasten'd on towards *Jarawena*, another of the Czar of *Muscovy*'s Colonies, and where we expected we should be safe; but it is to be observ'd, that here we began for two or three Days March, to enter upon the vast nameless Desart, of which I shall say more in its Place; and which, if we had now been upon it, 'tis more than probable, we had been all destroy'd: It was the second Day's March from *Plotbus*, that by the Clouds of Dust behind us at a great Distance, some of our People began to be sensible we were pursued; we had enter'd the Desart, and had pass'd by a great Lake call'd *Schaks-Oser* when we perceiv'd a very great Body of Horse appear on the other Side of the Lake to the North, we travelling West: We observ'd they went

away West as we did, but had supposed we would have taken that Side of the Lake, whereas, we very happily took the South Side; and in two Days more, we saw them not, for they believing we were still before them, push'd on till they came to the river *Udda*; this is a very great River when it passes farther North; but where we came to it, we found it narrow, and fordable.

The third Day they either found their Mistake, or had Intelligence of us, and came pouring in upon us, towards the Dusk of the Evening: We had, to our great Satisfaction, just pitch'd upon a Place for our Camp, which was very convenient for the Night; for as we were upon a Desert, tho' but at the beginning of it, that was above five hundred Miles over, we had no Towns to lodge at, and indeed expected none but the City *Jarawena*, which we had yet two Days march to; the Desert however, had some few Woods in it on this Side, and little Rivers, which ran all into the great river *Udda*: It was in a narrow Strait between two little, but very thick Woods, that we pitch'd our little Camp for that Night, expecting to be attack'd in the Night.

No body knew but ourselves, what we were pursued for; but as it was usual for the *Mongul Tartars* to go about in Troops in that Desert, so the Caravans always fortify themselves every Night against them, as against Armies of Robbers; and it was therefore no new thing to be pursued.

But we had this Night, of all the Nights of our Travels, a most advantageous Camp; for we lay between two Woods, with a little Rivulet running just before our Front; so that we could not be surrounded, or attack'd any way, but in our Front or Rear; we took Care also to make our Front as strong as we could, by placing our

Packs, with our Camels and Horses, all in a Line on the Inside of the River, and felling some Trees in our Rear.

In this Posture we encamp'd for the Night, but the Enemy was upon us before we had finish'd our Situation: They did not come on us like Thieves as we expected, but sent three Messengers to us, to demand the Men to be delivered to them, that had abus'd their Priests, and burn'd their God, *Cham-Chi-Thaungu* with Fire, that they might burn them with Fire; and upon this, they said they would go away, and do us no farther harm, otherwise, they would burn us all with Fire. Our Men look'd very blank at this Message, and began to stare at one another, to see who look'd with most Guilt in their Faces; but *no Body* was the Word, no Body did it. The Leader of the Caravan sent Word, he was well assur'd, it was not done by any of our Camp; that we were peaceable Merchants, travelling on our Business; that we had done no harm to them, or to any one else; and that therefore, they must look farther for their Enemies who had injur'd them, for we were not the People; so desir'd them not to disturb us, for if they did, we should defend our selves.

They were far from being satisfy'd with this for an Answer, but a great Crowd of them came down in the Morning by break of Day to our Camp; but seeing us in such an unaccountable Situation, they durst come no farther than the Brook in our Front, where they stood and shew'd us such a Number, that indeed terrify'd us very much; for those that spoke least of them, spoke of ten thousand: here they stood and look'd at us a while, and then setting up a great Howl, they let fly a Cloud of Arrows among us; but we were well enough fortified for that; for we shelter'd under our Baggage, and I do not remember that one Man of us was hurt.

Some Time after this, we see them move a little to our Right, and expected them on the Rear, when a cunning Fellow, a *Cossack*, as they call them, of *Jarawena*, in the Pay of the *Muscovites*, calling to the Leader of the Caravan, said to him, I'll go send all these People away to *Sibeilka*; this was a City, four or five Days Journey at least to the South, and rather behind us: so he takes his Bow and Arrows, and getting on Horse-back, he rides away from our Rear directly, as it were back to *Nertssinskay*; after this, he takes a great Circuit about, and comes to the Army of the *Tartars*, as if he had been sent Express to tell them a long Story; that the People who had burnt the *Cham-Chi-Thaungu*, were gone to *Sibeilka*, with a Caravan of Miscreants, as he call'd them, that is to say, Christians; and that they had resolv'd to burn the God *Schal-Isar*, belonging to the *Tongueses*.

As this Fellow was himself a meer *Tartar*, and perfectly spoke their Language, he counterfeited so well, that they all took it from him, and away they drove in a most violent Hurry to *Sibeilka*, which it seems was five Days Journey to the North, and in less than three Hours, they were entirely out of our Sight, and we never heard any more of them; and we never knew whether they went to that other Place called *Sibeilka*, or no.

So we pass'd safely on to the City of *Jarawena*, where there was a Garrison of *Muscovites*, and there we rested five Days, the Caravan being exceedingly fatigued with the last Day's hard march, and with want of Rest in the Night.

From this City we had a frightful Desart, which held us three and twenty Days march: We furnish'd our selves with some Tents here, for the better accommodating our selves in the Night; and the Leader of the Caravan, pro-

cured sixteen Carriages or Waggon's of the Country, for carrying our Water and Provisions, and these Carriages were our Defence every Night round our little Camp; so that had the *Tartars* appeared, unless they had been very numerous indeed, they would not have been able to hurt us.

We may well be supposed to want Rest again after this long Journey; for in this Desert we saw neither House or Tree, or scarce a Bush; we saw abundance of the Sable-Hunters, as they call'd them: These are all *Tartars* of the *Mongul Tartary*, of which this Country is a part, and they frequently attack small Caravans, but we saw no Numbers of them together: I was curious to see the Sable Skins they caught, but could never speak with any of them, for they durst not come near us, neither durst we straggle from our Company, to go near them.

After we had pass'd this Desert, we came into a Country pretty well inhabited; that is to say, we found Towns and Castles, settled by the Czar of *Muscovy*, with Garrisons of Stationary Soldiers to protect the Caravans, and defend the Country against the *Tartars*, who would otherwise make it very dangerous travelling; and his *Czarish Majesty* has given such strict Orders for the well guarding the Caravans and Merchants, that if there are any *Tartars* heard of in the Country, Detachments of the Garrisons are always sent to see the Travellers safe from Station to Station.

And thus the Governour of *Adinskoy*, who I had Opportunity to make a Visit to, by means of the *Scots Merchant* who was acquainted with him, offer'd us a Guard of fifty Men, if we thought there was any Danger to the next Station.

I thought long before this, that as we came nearer to

Europe we should find the Country better peopled, and the People more civiliz'd, but I found my self mistaken in both, for we had yet the Nation of the *Tongueses* to pass through; where we saw the same Tokens of Paganism and Barbarity, or worse, than before, only as they were conquer'd by the *Muscovites*, and entirely reduc'd, they were not so dangerous; but for Rudeness of Manners, Idolatry, and Multitheism no People in the World ever went beyond them: They are cloath'd all in Skins of Beasts, and their Houses are built of the same: You know not a Man from a Woman, neither by the Ruggedness of their Countenances or their Cloaths; and in the Winter, when the Ground is cover'd with Snow, they live under Ground in Houses like Vaults, which have Cavities going from one to another.

If the *Tartars* had their *Cham-Cbi-Tongu* for a whole Village or Country, these had Idols in every Hutt and in every Cave; besides, they worship the Stars, the Sun, the Water, the Snow, and in a word, every thing that they do not understand, and they understand but very little; so that almost every Element, every uncommon thing, sets them a sacrificing.

But I am no more to describe People than Countries, any farther than my own Story comes to be concerned in them: I met with nothing peculiar to my self in this all Country, which I reckon was from the Desart which I spoke of last, at least 400 Miles, half of it being another Desart, which took us up twelve Days severe travelling, without House, or Tree, or Bush, but were oblig'd again to carry our own Provisions, as well Water as Bread. After we were out of this Desart, and had travell'd two Days, we came to *Janezay*, a *Muscovite* City or Station, on the great River *Janezay*: this River they told us parted *Europe*

from *Asia*, tho' our Map-makers, as I am told, do not agree to it; however, it is certainly the Eastern Boundary of the ancient *Siberia*, which now makes up a Province only of the vast *Muscovite* Empire, but is it self equal in Bigness to the whole Empire of *Germany*.

And yet here I observ'd Ignorance and Paganism still prevail'd, except in the *Muscovite* Garrisons; all the Country between the River *Oby* and the River *Janezay* is as entirely Pagan, and the People as barbarous, as the remotest of the *Tartars*, nay, as any Nation for ought I know in *Asia* or *America*: I also found, which I observ'd to the *Muscovite* Governours who I had Opportunity to converse with, that the poor Pagans are not much the wiser or the nearer Christianity for being under the *Muscovite* Government; which they acknowledg'd was true enough, but, as they said, was none of their Business: That if the Czar expected to convert his *Siberian*, or *Tonguese*, or *Tartar* Subjects, it should be done by sending Clergymen among them, not Soldiers; and they added, with more Sincerity than I expected, that they found it was not so much the Concern of their Monarch to make the People Christians, as it was to make them Subjects.

From this River to the great River *Oby*, we cross'd a wild uncultivated Country: I cannot say 'tis a barren Soil; 'tis only barren of People, and good Management, otherwise it is in itself a most pleasant, fruitful and agreeable Country: What Inhabitants we found in it are all Pagans, except such as are sent among them from *Russia*; for this is the Country I mean on both Sides the River *Oby*, whither the *Muscovite* Criminals, that are not put to Death, are banish'd, and from whence it is next to impossible they should ever come away.

I have nothing material to say of my particular Affairs,

till I came to *Tobolski*, the Capital City of *Siberia*, where I continued some time on the following Occasion.

We had been now almost seven Months on our Journey, and Winter began to come on apace; whereupon my Partner and I call'd a Council about our particular Affairs, in which we found it proper, considering that we were bound for *England*, and not for *Muscow*, to consider how to dispose of our selves: They told us of Sledges and Rane Deer to carry us over the Snow in the Winter time; and indeed they have such things, that it would be incredible to relate the Particulars of, by which means the *Russians* travel more in the Winter than they can in Summer, because in these Sleds they are able to run Night and Day; the Snow being frozen, is one universal Covering to Nature, by which the Hills, the Vales, the Rivers, the Lakes, all are smooth, and hard as a Stone, and they run upon the Surface, without any regard to what is underneath.

But I had no occasion to push at a Winter Journey of this kind: I was bound to *England*, not to *Muscow*, and my Rout lay two ways, either I must go on as the Caravan went till I came to *Jeroslaw*, and then go off West for *Narva*, and the Gulph of *Finland*; and so either by Sea or Land to *Dantzick*, where I might possibly sell my *China* Cargo to good Advantage, or I must leave the Caravan at a little Town on the *Dwina*, from whence I had but six Days by Water to *Arch-Angel*, and from thence might be sure of Shipping, either to *England*, *Holland*, or *Hamburg*.

Now to go any of these Journeys in the Winter, would ha' been preposterous; for as to *Dantzick*, the *Baltick* would be frozen up, and I could not get Passage, and to go by Land in those Countries, was far less safe than among the *Mongul Tartars*; likewise to go to *Arch-Angel*

in *October*, all the Ships would be gone from thence, and even the Merchants who dwell there in Summer, retire South to *Muscow* in the Winter when the Ships are gone; so that I should have nothing but Extremity of Cold to encounter, with a Scarcity of Provisions, and must lie there in an empty Town all the Winter: so that upon the whole I thought it much my better way to let the Caravan go, and to make Provision to Winter where I was, (*viz.*) at *Tobolski* in *Siberia*, in the Latitude of [sixty] Degrees, where I was sure of three Things to wear out a cold Winter with, (*viz.*) Plenty of Provision such as the Country afforded; a warm House, with Fuel enough, and excellent Company; of all which I shall give a full Account in its Place.

I was now in a quite different Climate from my belov'd Island, where I never felt Cold except when I had my Ague; on the contrary, I had much to do to bear any Cloaths on my Back, and never made any Fire but without Doors, and for my necessity in dressing my Food, &c. Now I made me three good Vests, with large Robes or Gowns over them to hang down to the Feet, and button close to the Wrists, and all these lin'd with Furs to make them sufficiently warm.

As to a warm House, I must confess I greatly dislik'd our way in *England* of making Fires in every Room in the House, in open Chimneys, which when the Fire was out, always kept the Air in the Room cold as the Climate: But taking an Appartment in a good House in the Town, I order'd a Chimney to be built like a Furnace, in the Center of six several Rooms, like a Stove, the Funnel to carry the Smoak went up one Way, the Door to come at the Fire, went in another, and all the Rooms were kept equally warm, but no Fire seen; just as they heat the Bagnios in *England*.

By this means we had always the same Climate in all the Rooms, and an equal Heat was preserv'd; and how cold soever it was without, it was always warm within, and yet we saw no Fire, nor was ever incommoded with any Smoke.

The most wonderful thing of all was, that it should be possible to meet with good Company here, in a Country so barbarous as that of the most Northerly Parts of *Europe*, near the frozen Ocean, and within but a very few Degrees of *Nova Zembla*.

But this being the Country where the State Criminals of *Muscovy*, as I observ'd before, are all banish'd, this City was full of Noblemen, Princes, Gentlemen, Colonels, and in short, all Degrees of the Nobility, Gentry, Soldiery and Courtiers of *Muscovy*: Here was the famous Prince *Galiozen*, the old General *Robostiski*, and several other Persons of note, and some Ladies.

By means of my *Scots* Merchant, who nevertheless I parted with here, I made an Acquaintance here with several of these Gentlemen, and some of them of the first Rank, and from these in the long Winter Nights in which I stay'd here, I receiv'd several very agreeable Visits: It was talking one Night with Prince one of the banish'd Ministers of State, belonging to the Czar of *Muscovy*, that my Talk of my particular Case began: He had been telling me abundance of fine Things of the Greatness, the Magnificence, the Dominions, and the absolute Power of the Emperor of the *Russians*. I interrupted him, and told him I was a greater and more powerful Prince than ever the Czar of *Muscovy* was, tho' my Dominions were not so large, or my People so many. The *Russian Grandee* look'd a little surpriz'd, and fixing his Eyes steddily upon me, began to wonder what I meant.

I told him, his Wonder would cease when I had explain'd myself: First, *I told him*, I had the absolute Disposal of the Lives and Fortunes of all my Subjects: That notwithstanding my absolute Power, I had not one Person disaffected to my Government, or to my Person, in all my Dominions. He shook his Head at that, and said, there indeed I outdid the Czar of *Muscovy*. *I told him*, That all the Lands in my Kingdom were my own, and all my Subjects were not only my Tenants, but Tenants at Will: That they would all fight for me to the last Drop; and that never Tyrant, *for such I acknowledged myself to be*, was ever so universally beloved, and yet so horribly feared by his Subjects.

After amusing them with these Riddles in Government for a while, I open'd the Case, and told them the Story at large of my living in the Island, and how I managed both myself and the People there that were under me, just as I have since minuted it down. They were exceedingly taken with the Story, and especially the Prince, who told me with a Sigh, that the true Greatness of Life was to be Master of our selves: That he would not have exchanged such a State of Life as mine, to have been Czar of *Muscovy*; and that he found more Felicity in the Retirement he seem'd to be banish'd to there, than ever he found in the highest Authority he enjoy'd in the Court of his Master the Czar: That the Height of human Wisdom was to bring our Tempers down to our Circumstances; and to make a Calm within, under the Weight of the greatest Scorns without. When he came first hither, he said he used to tear the Hair from his Head, and the Cloaths from his Back, as others had done before him; but a little Time and Consideration had made him look into himself, as well as round him to things without: That he found the Mind of

Man, if it was but once brought to reflect upon the State of universal Life, and how little this World was concern'd in its true Felicity, was perfectly capable of making a Felicity for itself, fully satisfying to itself, and suitable to its own best Ends and Desires, with but very little Assistance from the World: That Air to breath in, Food to sustain Life, Cloaths for Warmth, and Liberty for Exercise in order to Health, compleated, in his Opinion, all that the World could do for us; and tho' the Greatness, the Authority, the Riches, and the Pleasures which some enjoy'd in the World, and which he had enjoy'd his Share of, had much in them that was agreeable to us; yet he observ'd that all those things chiefly gratify'd the coarsest of our Affections, such as our Ambition, our particular Pride, our Avarice, our Vanity, and our Sensuality; all which were indeed the meer Product of the worst part of Man, were in themselves Crimes, and had in them the Seeds of all manner of Crimes, but neither were related to, or concern'd with any of those Virtues that constituted us wise Men, or of those Graces which distinguish'd us as Christians: That being now deprived of all the fancy'd Felicity which he enjoy'd in the full Exercise of all those Vices, he said he was at leisure to look upon the dark Side of them, where he found all manner of Deformity, and was now convinced, that Virtue only makes a Man truly wise, rich and great, and preserves him in the way to a superior Happiness in a future State. And in this he said, they were more happy in their Banishment than all their Enemies were, who had the full Possession of all the Wealth and Power that they (the Banish'd) had left behind them.

Nor, Sir, says he, do I bring my Mind to this politically, by the Necessity of my Circumstances, which some call miserable; but if I know any thing of my self, I would

not now go back, tho' the Czar, my Master, should call me, and re-instate me in all my former Grandeur; I say, I would no more go back to it, than I believe my Soul, when it shall be deliver'd from this Prison of the Body, and has had a Taste of the glorious State beyond Life, would come back to the Jayl of Flesh and Blood it is now enclos'd in, and leave Heaven to deal in the Dirt and Crime of human Affairs.

He spoke this with so much Warmth in his Temper, so much Earnestness and Motion of his Spirits, which were apparent in his Countenance, that it was evident it was the true Sense of his Soul: There was no room to doubt his Sincerity.

I told him, I once thought my self a kind of a Monarch in my old Station, of which I had given him an Account, but that I thought he was not a Monarch only, but a great Conqueror; for that he that has got a Victory over his own exorbitant Desires, and has the absolute Dominion over himself, whose Reason entirely governs his Will, is certainly greater than he that conquers a City. But, my Lord, *said I*, shall I take the Liberty to ask you a Question? With all my Heart, says he. If the Door of your Liberty was open'd, *said I*, would you not take hold of it to deliver your self from this Exile.

Hold, said he, your Question is subtle, and requires some serious just Distinctions, to give it a sincere Answer; and I'll give it you from the Bottom of my Heart. Nothing that I know of in this World would move me to deliver my self from this State of Banishment, except these two, First, the Enjoyment of my Relations, and Secondly, a little warmer Climate; but I protest to you, that to go back to the Pomp of the Court, the Glory, the Power, the Hurry of a Minister of State, the Wealth, the Gaiety, and

the Pleasures, that is to say, Follies of a Courtier; if my Master should send me Word this Moment, that he restores me to all he banish'd me from; I protest, *If I know myself at all*, I would not leave this Wilderness, these Deserts, and these frozen Lakes, for the Palace at *Muscow*.

But, my Lord, said I, perhaps you not only are banish'd from the Pleasures of the Court, and from the Power, and Authority, and Wealth you enjoy'd before, but you may be absent too from some of the Conveniences of Life, your Estate perhaps confiscated and your Effects plunder'd, and the Supplies left you here may not be suitable to the ordinary Demands of Life.

Ay, says he, that is as you suppose me to be a Lord, or a Prince, &c. So indeed I am; but you are now to consider me only as a Man, a human Creature, not at all distinguish'd from another, and so I can suffer no Want, unless I should be visited with Sickness and Distempers. However, to put the Question out of Dispute; you see our Manner; we are in this Place five Persons of Rank, we live perfectly retir'd, as suited to a State of Banishment; we have something rescu'd from the Shipwreck of our Fortunes, which keeps us from the meer Necessity of hunting for our Food; but the poor Soldiers who are here, without that Help, live in as much Plenty as we, who go into the Woods and catch Sables and Foxes; the Labour of a Month will maintain them a Year; and as the Way of living is not expensive, so it is not hard to get sufficient to our selves. So that Objection is out of Doors.

I have not room to give a full Account of the most agreeable Conversation I had with this truly great Man; in all which he shew'd, that his Mind was so inspir'd with a superior Knowledge of Things, so supported by Religion, as well as by a vast Share of Wisdom; that his Contempt

of the World was really as much as he had express'd, and that he was always the same to the last, as will appear in the Story I am going to tell.

I had been here 8 Months, and a dark dreadful Winter I thought it to be, the Cold so intense, that I could not so much as look abroad without being wrapt in Furs, and a Mask of Fur before my Face, or rather a Hood with only a Hole for Breath, and two for Sight: The little Day-light we had, was, as we reckon'd, for three Months, not above five Hours a day, and six at most; only that the Snow lying on the Ground continually, and the Weather clear, it was never quite dark: Our Horses were kept (or rather starv'd) under Ground, and as for our Servants, for we hir'd three Servants here to look after our Horses and selves, we had every now and then their Fingers and Toes to thaw and take care of, lest they should mortify and fall off.

It is true, within Doors we were warm, the Houses being close, the Walls thick, the Lights small, and the Glass all double; our Food was chiefly the Flesh of Deer dry'd and cur'd in the Season; good Bread enough, but bak'd as Biskets; dry'd Fish of several Sorts, and some Flesh of Mutton, and of the Buffeloes, which is pretty good Beef: All the Stores of Provision for the Winter are laid up in the Summer, and well cur'd; our Drink was Water mix'd with Aqua-vitæ instead of Brandy, and for a Treat, Mead instead of Wine, which, however, they have excellent good: The Hunters, who venture abroad all Weathers, frequently brought us in fresh Venison, very fat and good, and sometimes Bears Flesh, but we did not much care for the last: We had a good Stock of Tea, with which we treated our Friends, as above; and in a word, we liv'd very chearfully and well, all things consider'd.

It was now *March*, and the Days grown considerably longer, and the Weather, at least, tolerable, so the other Travellers began to prepare Sleds to carry them over the Snow, and to get things ready to be going; but my Measures being fix'd, as I have said, for *Arch-Angel*, and not for *Muscovy* or the *Baltick*, I made no Motion; knowing very well that the Ships from the South do not set out for that Part of the World till *May* or *June*, and that if I was there by the beginning of *August*, it would be as soon as any Ships would be ready to go away; and therefore, I say, I made no haste to be gone, as others did; in a word, I saw a great many People, nay, all the Travellers go away before me: It seems every Year they go from thence to *Muscovy* for Trade, (*viz.*) to carry Furs, and buy Necessaries with them, which they bring back to furnish their Shops; also others went of the same Errand to *Arch-Angel*, but then they also being to come back again above 800 Miles, went all out before me.

In short, about the latter End of *May* I began to make all ready to pack up; and as I was doing this, it occur'd to me, that seeing all these People were banish'd by the Czar of *Muscovy* to *Siberia*, and yet when they came there, were left at Liberty to go whither they would; why did they not then go away to any Part of the World where ever they thought fit, and I began to examine what should hinder them from making such an Attempt.

But my Wonder was over, when I enter'd upon that Subject with the Person I have mention'd, who answer'd me thus: Consider, First, Sir, said he, the Place where we are; and Secondly, the Condition we are in; especially, said he, the Generality of the People who are banish'd hither; we are surrounded, said he, with stronger Things than Bars and Bolts; on the North Side an unnavigable

Ocean, where Ship never sail'd, and Boat never swam; neither, if we had both, could we know where to go with them: Every other Way, said he, we have above a Thousand Miles to pass through the Czar's own Dominions, and By-Ways utterly unpassable, except by the Roads made by the Governour, and by the Towns garrison'd by his Troops; so that we could neither pass undiscover'd by the Road, or subsist any other Way, so that it is in vain to attempt it.

I was silenc'd indeed at once, and found that they were in a Prison, every Jot as secure as if they had been lock'd up in the Castle at *Muscow*; however, it came into my Thought, that I might certainly be made an Instrument to procure the Escape of this excellent Person, and that whatever Hazard I run, I would certainly try if I could carry him off. Upon this I took an Occasion one Evening to tell him my Thoughts: I represented to him, that it was very easy for me to carry him away, there being no Guard over him in the Country, and as I was not going to *Muscow*, but to *Arch-Angel*, and that I went in the nature of a Caravan, by which I was not oblig'd to lye in the stationary Towns in the Desart, but could encamp every Night where I would, we might easily pass uninterrupted to *Arch-Angel*, where I would immediately secure him on Board an *English* or *Dutch* Ship, and carry him off safe along with me; and as to his Subsistence, and other Particulars, it should be my Care till he could better supply himself.

He heard me very attentively, and look'd earnestly on me all the while I spoke; nay, I could see in his very Face, that what I said put his Spirits into an exceeding Ferment; his Colour frequently chang'd, his Eyes look'd red, and his Heart flutter'd, that it might be even perceiv'd in his

Countenance; nor could he immediately answer me, when I had done, and as it were expected what he would say to it; but after he had paus'd a little he embrac'd me, and said, how unhappy are we unguarded Creatures as we are, that even our greatest Acts of Friendship are made Snares to us, and we are made Tempters of one another! My dear Friend, said he, your Offer is so sincere, has such Kindness in it, is so disinterested in it self, and is so calculated for my Advantage, that I must have very little Knowledge of the World, if I did not both wonder at it, and acknowledge the Obligation I have upon me to you for it. But did you believe I was sincere in what I have so often said to you of my Contempt of the World? Did you believe I spoke my very Soul to you, and that I had really obtain'd that Degree of Felicity here, that had plac'd me above all that the World could give me, or do for me? Did you believe I was sincere, when I told you I would not go back, if I was re-call'd even to be all, that once I was in the Court with the Favour of the Czar my Master? Did you believe me, my Friend, to be an honest Man, or did you think me to be a boasting Hypocrite? Here he stopp'd, as if he would hear what I would say, but indeed, I soon after perceiv'd, that he stopp'd because his Spirits were in Motion, his great Heart was full of Struggles, and he could not go on. I was, I confess, astonish'd at the thing as well as at the Man, and I us'd some Arguments with him to urge him to set himself free: That he ought to look upon this as a Door open'd by Heaven for his Deliverance, and a Summons by Providence, who has the Care and Disposition of all Events, to do himself good, and to render himself useful in the World.

He had by this time recover'd himself: How do you know Sir, says he warmly, that instead of a Summons

from Heaven, it may not be a Feint of another Instrument? Representing in all the alluring Colours to me the Shew of Felicity as a Deliverance, which may in itself be my Snare, and tends directly to my Ruin: Here I am free from the Temptation of returning to my former miserable Greatness; there I am not sure but that all the Seeds of Pride, Ambition, Avarice and Luxury, which I know remain in Nature, may revive and take Root, and in a Word, again overwhelm me, and then the happy Prisoner, who you see now Master of his Soul's Liberty, shall be the miserable Slave of his own Senses, in the Full of all personal Liberty: Dear Sir, let me remain in this blessed Confinement, banish'd from the Crimes of Life, rather than purchase a Shew of Freedom, at the Expence of the Liberty of my Reason, and at the Expence of the future Happiness which now I have in my View, but shall then, I fear, quickly lose Sight of; for I am but Flesh, a Man, a meer Man, have Passions and Affections as likely to possess and overthrow me as any Man: O be not my Friend and my Tempter both together!

If I was surpriz'd before, I was quite dumb now, and stood silent, looking at him, and indeed admir'd at what I saw; the Struggle in his Soul was so great, that tho' the Weather was extreemly cold, it put him into a most violent Sweat, and I found he wanted to give Vent to his Mind; so I said a Word or two, that I would leave him to consider of it, and wait on him again, and then I withdrew to my own Apartment.

About two Hours after I heard some Body at, or near, the Door of my Room, and I was going to open the Door, but he had open'd it, and came in: My dear Friend, says he, you had almost overset me, but I am recover'd; do not take it ill that I do not close with your Offer, I assure you,

'tis not for want of a Sense of the Kindness of it in you, and I came to make the most sincere Acknowledgment of it to you; but I hope I have got the Victory over my self.

My Lord, *said I*, I hope you are fully satisfy'd that you do not resist the Call of Heaven. Sir, said he, if it had been from Heaven, the same Power would have influenc'd me to accept it; but I hope, and am fully satisfy'd, that it is from Heaven that I decline it, and I have an infinite Satisfaction in the Parting, that you shall leave me an honest Man still, tho' not a free Man.

I had nothing to do but to acquiesce, and make Professions to him of my having no End in it, but a sincere Desire to serve him: He embrac'd me very passionately, and assur'd me, he was sensible of that, and should always acknowledge it, and with that he offer'd me a very fine Present of Sables, too much indeed for me to accept from a Man in his Circumstances, and I would have avoided them, but he would not be refus'd.

The next Morning I sent my Servant to his Lordship, with a small Present of Tea, and two Pieces of *China* Damask, and four little Wedges of *Japan* Gold, which did not all weigh above six Ounces, or thereabout, but were far short of the Value of his Sables, which, indeed, when I came to *England*, I found worth near 200*l*. He accepted the Tea, and one Piece of the Damask, and one of the Pieces of Gold, which had a fine Stamp upon it, of the *Japan* Coinage, which I found he took for the Rarity of it, but would not take any more, and he sent word by my Servant that he desir'd to speak with me.

When I came to him, he told me, I knew what had pass'd between us, and hop'd I would not move him any more in that Affair; but that since I had made such a generous

Offer to him, he ask'd me, if I had Kindness enough to offer the same to another Person that he would name to me, in whom he had a great Share of Concern; I told him, that I could not say I inclin'd to do so much for any one but himself, for whom I had a particular Value, and should have been glad to have been the Instrument of his Deliverance; however, if he would please to name the Person to me, I would give him my Answer, and hop'd he would not be displeased with me, if he was with my Answer; he told me, it was only his Son, who, tho' I had not seen, yet was in the same Condition with himself, and above two hundred Miles from him, on the other side the *Oby*; but that if I consented, he would send for him.

I made no Hesitation, but told him I would do it: I made some Ceremony in letting him understand that it was wholly on his Account, and that seeing I could not prevail on him, I would shew my Respect to him, by my Concern for his Son; but these Things are too tedious to repeat here: He sent away the next Day for his Son, and in about twenty Days he came back with the Messenger, bringing six or seven Horses, loaded with very rich Furs, and which in the whole, amounted to a very great Value.

His Servants brought the Horses into the Town, but left the young Lord at a Distance, till Night, when he came *incognito* into our Apartment, and his Father presented him to me; and in short, we concerted there the manner of our travelling, and every Thing proper for the Journey.

I had bought a considerable Quantity of Sables, black Fox Skins, fine Ermines, and such other Furs as are very rich; I say, I had bought them in that City in Exchange for some of the Goods I brought from *China*; in particular for the Cloves and Nutmegs, of which, I sold the

greatest Part here, and the rest afterwards at *Arch-Angel*, for a much better Price than I could have done at *London*; and my Partner who was sensible of the Profit, and whose Business more particularly than mine was Merchandize, was mightily pleas'd with our Stay, on Account of the Traffick we made here.

It was the beginning of *June*, when I left this remote Place, a City, I believe, little heard of in the World; and indeed it is so far out of the Road of Commerce, that I know not how it should be much talk'd of. We were now come to a very small Caravan, being only thirty two Horses and Camels in all, and all of them pass'd for mine, tho' my new Guest was Proprietor of eleven of them; it was most natural also that I should take more Servants with me than I had before, and the young Lord pass'd for my Steward; what great Man I pass'd for my self, I know not, neither did it concern me to enquire; we had here, the worst and the largest Desart to pass over that we met with in all the Journey; indeed I call it the worst, because the Way was very deep in some Places, and very uneven in others; the best we had to say for it, was, that we thought we had no Troops of *Tartars* and Robbers to fear, and that they never came on this Side the River *Oby*, or at least, but very seldom, but we found it otherwise.

My young Lord had with him, a faithful *Muscovite* Servant, or rather a *Siberian* Servant, who was perfectly acquainted with the Country, and led us by private Roads, that we avoided coming in to the principal Towns and Cities, upon the great Road, such as *Tumen*, *Soly-Kamskoi*, and several others; because the *Muscovite* Garrisons which are kept there, are very curious and strict in their Observation upon Travellers; and searching least any of the banish'd Persons of Note should make their Escape that

Way into *Muscovy*; but by this Means, as we were kept out of the Cities, so our whole Journey was a Desart, and we were oblig'd to encamp and lye in our Tents, when we might have had very good Accommodation in the Cities on the Way: This the young Lord was so sensible of, that he would not allow us to lye abroad, when we came to several Cities, on the Way, but lay abroad himself with his Servant in the Woods, and met us always at the appointed Places.

We were just enter'd *Europe*, having pass'd the River *Kama*, which in these Parts, is the Boundary between *Europe* and *Asia*, and the first City on the *European* Side was call'd *Soloy-Kamaskoy*, which is as much as to say, the great City, on the River *Kama*; and here we thought to have seen some evident Alteration in the People, their Manner, their Habit, their Religion, and their Business; but we were mistaken, for as we had a vast Desart to pass, which by Relation, is near seven hundred Miles long in some Places, but not above two hundred Miles over where we pass'd it; so 'till we came past that horrible Place, we found very little Difference between that Country and the *Mogul Tartary*; the People, mostly Pagans, and little better than the Savages of *America*, their Houses and Towns full of Idols, and their Way of Living, wholly barbarous, except in the Cities as above, and the Villages near them; where they are Christians as they call themselves, of the *Greek Church*, but have their Religion mingled with so many Reliques of Superstition, that it is scarce to be known in some Places from meer Sorcery and Witchcraft.

In passing this Forrest, I thought indeed we must, after all our Dangers were in our Imagination escap'd, as before, have been plunder'd and robb'd, and perhaps

murther'd by a Troop of Thieves; of what Country they were, whether the roving Bands of the *Ostiachi*, a Kind of *Tartars* or wild People on the Bank of the *Obi*, had rang'd thus far, or whether they were the Sable-Hunters of *Siberia*, I am yet at a Loss to know; but they were all on Horseback, carry'd Bows and Arrows, and were at first about five and forty in Number; they came so near to us, as within about two Musquet-Shot, and asking no Questions, they surrounded us with their Horse, and look'd very earnestly upon us twice; at length they plac'd themselves just in our Way, upon which, we drew up in a little Line before our Camels, being not above sixteen Men in all; and being drawn up thus, we halted and sent out the *Siberian* Servant, who attended his Lord, to see who they were; his Master was the more willing to let him go, because he was not a little apprehensive, that they were a *Syberian* Troop sent out after him: The Man came up near them with a Flag of Truce, and call'd them, but tho' he spoke several of their Languages or Dialects of Languages rather, he could not understand a Word they said; however, after some Signs to him, not to come nearer to them at his Peril; so he said, he understood them to mean offering to shoot at him if he advanc'd; the Fellow came back no wiser than he went, only that by their Dress, he said, he believ'd them to be some *Tartars* of *Kalmuck*, or of the *Circassian* Hoords; and that there must be more of them upon the great Desart, tho' he never heard that any of them ever were seen so far North before.

This was small Comfort to us; however, we had no Remedy; there was on our left Hand at about a Quarter of a Mile's Distance, a little Grove or Clump of Trees which stood close together, and very near the Road; I immediately resolv'd we would advance to those Trees,

and fortify our selves as well as we could there; for first I considered, that the Trees would in a great Measure cover us from their Arrows, and in the next Place, they could not come to charge us in a Body; it was indeed my old *Portuguese* Pilot who proposed it, and who had this Excellency attending him, namely, that he was always readiest, and most apt to direct and encourage us in Cases of the most Danger; we advanc'd immediately with what Speed we could, and gain'd that little Wood, the *Tartars* or Thieves, for we know not what to call them, keeping their Stand, and not attempting to hinder us; when we came thither, we found to our great Satisfaction, that it was a swampy springy Piece of Ground, and on the one Side, a very great Spring of Water, which running out in a little Rill or Brook, was a little farther, joyn'd by another of the like Bigness, and was in short, the Head or Source of a considerable River, call'd afterwards the *Wirtska*; the Trees which grew about this Spring, were not all above two hundred, but were very large, and stood pretty thick; so that as soon as we got in, we saw our selves perfectly safe from the Enemy, unless they alighted and attack'd us on Foot.

But to make this more difficult, our *Portugueze*, with indefatigable Application, cut down great Arms of the Trees, and laid them hanging *not quite cut off* from one Tree to another, so that he made a continued Fence almost round us.

We stay'd here waiting the Motion of the Enemy some Hours, without perceiving they made any Motion; when about two Hours before Night, they came down directly upon us, and tho' we had not perceiv'd it, we found they had been join'd by some more of the same, so that they were near fourscore Horse, whereof however, we fancy'd

some were Women: They came on till they were within half Shot of our little Wood, when we fir'd one Musquet without Ball, and call'd to them in the *Russian* Tongue, to know what they wanted, and bid them keep off; but as if they knew nothing of what we said, they came on with a double Fury directly up to the Wood-side, not imagining we were so barricado'd that they could not break in; our old Pilot was our Captain, as well as he had been our Engineer, and desir'd of us not to fire upon them till they came within Pistol-Shot, and that we might be sure to kill, and that when we did fire, we should be sure to take good Aim; we bad him give the Word of Command, which he delay'd so long, that they were some of them within two Pikes length of us when we fir'd.

We aim'd so true, (or Providence directed our Shot so sure) that we kill'd fourteen of them, and wounded several others, as also several of their Horses; for we had all of us loaded our Pieces with two or three Bullets at least.

They were terribly surpriz'd with our Fire, and retreated immediately about one Hundred Rods from us; in which Time, we loaded our Pieces again, and seeing them keep that Distance, we sally'd out and catch'd four or five of their Horses, whose Riders we suppose were kill'd, and coming up to the dead, we could easily perceive they were *Tartars*, but knew not from what Country, or how they came to make an Excursion such an unusual Length.

About an Hour after they made a Motion to attack us again, and rode round our little Wood, to see where else they might break in; but finding us always ready to face them, they went off again, and we resolv'd not to stir from the Place for that Night.

We slept little you may be sure, but spent the most Part of the Night in strengthening our Situation, and bar-

ricadoing the Entrances into the Wood, and keeping a strict Watch, we waited for Day-Light, and when it came, it gave us a very unwelcome Discovery indeed; for the Enemy, who we thought were discourag'd with the Reception they had met with, were now encreased to no less than three hundred, and had set up eleven or twelve Huts and Tents, as if they were resolv'd to besiege us; and this little Camp they had pitch'd upon the open Plain, at about three Quarters of a Mile from us. We were indeed surpriz'd at this Discovery; and now I confess, I gave myself over for lost, and all that I had: The Loss of my Effects did not lye so near me, (*tho' they were very considerable*) as the Thoughts of falling into the Hands of such *Barbarians*, at the latter End of my Journey, after so many Difficulties and Hazards as I had gone thro'; and even in Sight of our Port, where we expected Safety and Deliverance; as for my Partner, he was raging; he declar'd, that to lose his Goods would be his Ruin; and he would rather die than be starv'd; and he was for fighting to the last Drop.

The young Lord, as gallant as ever Flesh shew'd itself, was for fighting to the last also; and my old Pilot was of the Opinion we were able to resist them all, in the Situation we were then in; and thus we spent the Day in Debates of what we should do; but towards Evening, we found that the Number of our Enemies still encreas'd, perhaps as they were abroad in several Parties for Prey; the first had sent out Scouts to call for Help, and to acquaint them of the Booty, and we did not know, but by the Morning they might still be a greater Number; so I began to enquire of those People we had brought from *Tobolski*, if there was no other, or more private Ways by which we might avoid them in the Night, and perhaps

either retreat to some Town, or get Help to guard us over the Desart.

The *Syberian*, who was Servant to the young Lord, told us, if we design'd to avoid them and not fight, he would engage to carry us off in the Night, to a Way that went North towards the *Petrou*, by which he made no Question, but we might get away, and the *Tartars* never the wiser; but he said, his Lord had told him, he would not retreat, but would rather chuse to fight. I told him, he mistook his Lord, for that he was too wise a Man to love Fighting for the sake of it; that I knew his Lord was brave enough by what he had shew'd already; but that his Lord knew better, than to desire to have seventeen or eighteen Men fight five hundred, unless an unavoidable Necessity forc'd them to it; and that if he thought it possible for us to escape in the Night, we had nothing else to do but to attempt it. He answer'd, if his Lord gave him such Orders, he would lose his Life if he did not perform it; we soon brought his Lord to give that Order, tho' privately, and we immediately prepar'd for the putting it in Practice.

And first, as soon as it began to be dark, we kindled a Fire in our little Camp, which we kept burning, and prepar'd so as to make it burn all Night, that the *Tartars* might conclude we were still there; but as soon as it was dark, (that is to say) so as we could see the Stars (for our Guide would not stir before) having all our Horses and Camels ready loaden, we followed our new Guide, who I soon found steer'd himself by the Pole, or North Star, all the Country being level for a long Way.

After we had travell'd two Hours very hard, it began to be lighter still, not that it was quite dark all Night, but the Moon began to rise, so that in short, it was rather lighter than we wish'd it to be; but by six a Clock the next

Morning we were gotten near forty Miles, tho' the Truth is, we almost spoil'd our Horses. Here we found a *Russian* Village named *Kermazinskoy*, where we rested, and heard nothing of the *Calmuck Tartars* that Day; about two Hours before Night we set out again, and travell'd till eight the next Morning, tho' not quite so quick as before, and about seven a Clock we pass'd a little River call'd *Kirtza*, and came to a good large Town inhabited by *Russians*, and very populous, call'd *Ozomoys*; there we heard that several Troops or Hoords of *Calmucks* had been abroad upon the Desart, but that we were now compleatly out of Danger of them, which was to our great Satisfaction you may be sure. Here we were oblig'd to get some fresh Horses, and having Need enough of Rest, we stay'd five Days; and my Partner and I agreed to give the honest *Syberian*, who brought us thither, the Value of ten Pistoles, for his conducting us.

In five Days more we came to *Veuslima*, upon the River *Witzogda*, and running into the *Dwina*, we were there very happily near the end of our Travels by Land, that River being navigable in seven Days Passage to *Arch-Angel*: From hence we came to *Lawrenskoy* the 3d of *July*, and providing our selves with two Luggage Boats, and a Barge for our own Convenience, we embark'd the 7th, and arriv'd all safe at *Arch-Angel* the 18th, having been a Year and five Months and three Days on the Journey, including our Stay of eight Months and odd Days at *Tobolski*.

We were oblig'd to stay at this Place six Weeks for the Arrival of the Ships, and must have tarry'd longer, had not a *Hamburgher* come in above a Month sooner than any of the *English* Ships; when after some Consideration,

that the City of *Hamburg* might happen to be as good a Market for our Goods as *London*, we all took Freight with him, and having put my Goods on board, it was most natural for me to put my Steward on board to take care of them, by which means my young Lord had a sufficient Opportunity to conceal himself, never coming on Shore, in all the time we stay'd there; and this he did, that he might not be seen in the City, where some of the *Muscow* Merchants would certainly have seen and discover'd him.

We sailed from *Arch-Angel* the 20th of *August* the same Year, and after no extraordinary bad Voyage, arriv'd in the *Elbe* the 13th of *September*. Here my Partner and I found a very good Sale for our Goods, as well those of *China*, as the Sables, &c. of *Syberia*; and dividing the Produce of our Effects, my Share amounted to 3475--17--3*d.* notwithstanding so many Losses we had sustain'd, and Charges we had been at; only remembering that I had included in this, about six hundred Pounds worth of Diamonds which I had purchas'd at *Bengal*.

Here the young Lord took his leave of us, and went up the *Elbe* in order to go to the Court of *Vienna*, where he resolv'd to seek Protection, and where he could correspond with those of his Father's Friends who were left alive: He did not part without all the Testimonies he could give me of Gratitude for the Service I had done him, and his Sense of my Kindness to the Prince his Father.

To conclude, having stay'd near four Months in *Hamburg*, I came from thence over Land to the *Hague*, where I embark'd in the Pacquet, and arriv'd in *London* the 10th of *January*, 1705, having been gone from *England* ten Years and nine Months.

And here, resolving to harrass my self no more, I am preparing for a longer Journey than all these, having liv'd 72 Years, a Life of infinite Variety, and learn'd sufficiently to know the Value of Retirement, and the Blessing of ending our Days in Peace.

FINIS.

DATE DUE

Aug 16 '49

Aug 1 '62

PHILLIPS ACADEMY



3 1867 00028 5176

53501

820
D362
v. 9

